# 

# Emulex LPFC Driver for Solaris

Version 6.11c

User Manual



Copyright© 2007 Emulex Corporation. All rights reserved worldwide. No part of this document may be reproduced by any means nor translated to any electronic medium without the written consent of Emulex Corporation.

Information furnished by Emulex Corporation is believed to be accurate and reliable. However, no responsibility is assumed by Emulex Corporation for its use; or for any infringements of patents or other rights of third parties which may result from its use. No license is granted by implication or otherwise under any patent or patent rights of Emulex Corporation.

Emulex, AutoPilot Installer, BlockGuard, cLAN, FabricStream, FibreSpy, Giganet, HBAnyware, InSpeed, IntraLink, LightPulse, MultiPulse, SAN Insite, SBOD and Vixel are registered trademarks, and AutoPilot Manager, EZPilot, SLI and VMPilot are trademarks of Emulex Corporation. All other brand or product names referenced herein are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective companies or organizations.

Emulex provides this manual "as is" without any warranty of any kind, either expressed or implied, including but not limited to the implied warranties of merchantability or fitness for a particular purpose. Emulex Corporation may make improvements and changes to the product described in this manual at any time and without any notice. Emulex Corporation assumes no responsibility for its use, nor for any infringements of patents or other rights of third parties that may result. Periodic changes are made to information contained herein; although these changes will be incorporated into new editions of this manual, Emulex Corporation disclaims any undertaking to give notice of such changes.

Installation		.1
	Driver Information	1
	Supported Features	1
	New Features in this Release	2
	Prerequisites	2
	Compatibility	2
	Important Files	3
	Known Issues	4
	Installing the Emulex Driver for Solaris Version 6.11c	9
	Introduction	. 9
	Installing the Driver for the First Time	10
	Installing the Driver as a Loadable Kernel Module	11
	RCM Script	12
	Updating Existing Drivers	12
	Updating a PCI Driver (from Version 6.X) for PCI and PCI-Express HBAs	13
	update lpfc	13 14
	Updating a PCI Driver (from Version 4.X) for PCI and PCI-Express HBAs	15
	Updating an SBus Driver (from Version 4.X)	16
	HBAs in One System	17
	Directory Structure	18
	Installing the Utilities	18
	Prereguisites	18
	Procedure	19
	Installing the HBAnyware Utility with Web Launch	19
	Prerequisites	19
	Procedure	20
	Prerequisites	20
	Procedure	20
	Removing an Existing Driver	21
	Uninstalling the Utilities	21
	Uninstalling the HBAnyware Security Configurator	21
	Uninstalling the HBAnyware and Iputil Utilities	22
	Uninstalling HBAnyware with Web Launch	22
	Loading Manpages	22
	SUN SAN Foundation Software Considerations	22
Configuration	۱	23
	Introduction	23
	Starting the HBAnyware Utility for Solaris	24
	Starting the HBAnyware Utility	24
	Starting HBAnyware with Web Launch	24
	Starting the HBAnyware Security Configurator	24
	Starting the HBAnyware Utility from the Command Line	25 26
	The HBAnyware Utility Window Element Definitions	27

The Menu Bar	27
The Toolbar	28
The Toolbar Buttons	28
The Discovery-Tree	29
Property Tabs	30
Status Bar	30
Using the HBAnyware Utility Command-Line Interface	30
Using the CLI Client	30
Starting the lputil Utility	57
No-Reboot Features	57
Discovering New Targets and LUNS	57
Removing Ghost LUNS	59
Adding New Adapters, Changing Bindings and Changing Driver Parameters	59
Turning on Logging Capability	60
No-Reboot Firmware Undates	60
Loading or Unloading the Driver Without Pehooting	61
	01
Discovering HBAs	62
Discovering HBAs Using the HBAnyware Utility	62
Configuring Discovery Settings	63
Discovering HBAs Using the Iputil Utility	64
Sorting HBA Information	64
Sorting UPAs Using the UPAsymetry Utility	61
Softing HDAS Using the HDAnyware Utility	04 64
Soll by Host Name	04 65
Solit by Fablic Addless	00
Sorting Local HBAS Only Using the HBAnyware Utility	00
Sorting Local HBAS Using Iputil	65
Viewing HBA Information Using the HBAnyware Utility	65
Viewing Discovery Information	65
Discovery Information Field Definitions	66
Viewing Host Information	66
The Host Information Tab	67
The Host Driver Parameters Tab	67
Viewing General HBA Attributes	68
Adapter Summary Field Definitions	69
Adapter Status Area Field Definitions	69
Viewing Detailed HBA Information	70
Adapter Details Field Definitions	70
Port Attributes Field Definitions	71
Loop Map Table Definitions	71
Viewing Fabric Information	71
Discovery Information Field Definitions	72
Viewing Target Information	72
Viewing LUN Information	73
LUN Information Field Definitions	74
Viewing Port Statistics	74
Port Statistics Field Definitions	75
Viewing Firmware Information	76
Firmware Field Definitions	77
Viewing Target Mapping	 78
Target Mapping Field Definitions	78
Viewing HBA Information using the Inutil Litility	70
newing the time mation using the path office	13

Resetting	g HBAs	80
Rese	etting the HBA Using the HBAnyware Utility	80
Rese	etting the HBA Using the Iputil Utility	81
Updating	Firmware	81
Upda	ating Firmware Using the HBAnyware Utility	81
	Prerequisites	81
F	Procedure	81
Upda	ating Firmware (Batch Mode) Using the HBAnyware Utility	84
·	Prerequisites	84
F	Procedure	84
Upda	ating Firmware Using the Iputil Utility	85
F	Prerequisites	85
- F	Procedure	86
Enat	bling or Disabling the BIOS	86
t	Enabling or Disabling the BIOS Using the HBAnyware Utility	86
		0/
Configur	ing the Driver	89
Setti	ng Driver Parameters Using the HBAnyware Utility	89
	Setting Driver Parameters for an HBA	89
	Setting Driver Parameters for a Host	91
C	Sreating the Batch Mode Driver Parameters File	92
/ Conf	Assigning Balch Mode Parameters to HDAS	92
	Ising lofe conf for Solaris 9 and 10	93
l	Jodating Parameters for Solaris 8	94
Unde	erstanding Device Numbering	94
The	Configuration File (lpfc.conf)	95
Probing	for FCP Disk Taraets Configuring sd.conf1	06
Probing	for FCP Tape Targets Configuring st conf	07
Setting I	In Persistent Binding	08
Setting C	ng Un Derejetent Dinding Lleing the UDAnywere Litility	00
Setti	ng Up Persistent Binding Using the HBAnyware Utility	08
Chai	ng New Targets Using succini for Solaris 6, 9 and 10	111 111
Setti	ng Up Persistent Binding Using the Iputil Utility	111
Setti	ng Up Target/LUN Blocking Using sd.conf	12
Enabling	IP Networking	14
		11
Enat	view	14
Crea	ting Hostname Infc# Files	14
F	Required Hostname File	14
	Additional Hostname Files1	14
Verif	ying the Network Connection 1	15
Enat	bling IP Networking for Multiple Adapters 1	15
Crea	ting Additional Hostname.lpfc# Files 1	15
Conf	iguring the System-Wide File (/etc/system)1	16
[	Driver Installed in a Non-Standard Directory (moddir) 1	16
I	P Networking Enabled (forceload) 1	16
Performi	ng Diagnostic Tests Using the HBAnyware Utility1	17
Runi	ning a Quick Test 1	17
Runi	ning a POST Test 1	18

Using Beaconing	118
Creating Diagnostic Dumps	119
Displaying PCI Registers and Wakeup Information	. 119
Running Advanced Diagnostic Tests	. 120
Running Loophack Tests	121
Running End-to-End (ECHO) Tests	123
Soving the Log File	120
	. 124
Out-of-Band SAN Management	125
Adding a Single Host	. 125
Adding a Range of Hosts	. 126
Removing Hosts	. 127
HBAnyware Security	. 128
Introduction	. 128
Starting the HBAnyware Security Configurator	. 128
Prerequisites	. 128
Procedure	. 129
Running the Configurator for the First Time/Creating the ACG	129
Designating a Master Security Client	130
Access Control Groups	130
Introduction	130
Access Control Group Tab on the MSC	130
Access Control Group Tab on a Non MSC	121
	122
ACG ICONS	122
Adding a Carrier to the ACC	. 132
Adding a Server to the ACG	. 133
Deleting a Server from the ACG.	. 134
Removing Security from all Servers in the ACG	. 135
Generating New Security Keys	. 137
Restoring the ACG to Its Last Saved Configuration	. 138
Accessing a Switch	. 138
Accessing Sub-Groups	. 139
Introduction	. 139
ASG Icons	. 140
Creating an ASG	. 140
Reserved Indices - Examples	142
Adding a Server to an ASG	142
Deleting an ASG	143
Restoring an ASG to Its Last Saved Configuration	. 143
Editing an ASG	. 143
About Offline ASGs	145
Backup Masters	145
Introduction	145
Backun Master Fligible Systems	146
Backup Master Tab and Controls	1/7
Creating a Backup Master	1/7
Decesioning a Dackup Master on the New MSC from the Old MSC	. 147
Reassigning a Backup Master as the New MSC from the Old MSC	. 140
Backup Master	. 148
Troubleshooting	150
Introduction	150
	. 150
Unusual Situations and Their Resolutions	. 150

	General Situations	150
	Security Configurator Situations - Access Control Groups (ACG)	153
	Security Configuration Situations - Access Sub-Groups (ASG)	154
	HBAnyware Security Configurator Situations - Backup Masters	155
	Error Message Situations	156
	Master Security Client Situations	157
	Non-Hierarchical and Hierarchical ASG	158
lpfc	Log Messages	159
	Introduction	159
	Severity Codes	160
	Message Group Masks	160
	Message Log Example	161
	ELS Events (0100 - 0199)	161
	Link Discovery Events (0200 - 0299)	165
	Mailbox Events (0300 - 0399)	172
	Initialization Events (0400 - 0499)	177
	IP Traffic History (0600 - 0699)	184
	FCP Traffic History (0700 - 0799)	186
	Node Table Events (0900 - 0999)	191
	Miscellaneous Events (1200 - 1299)	194
	Link Events (1300 - 1399)	195
	Log Messages - IOCTL Events (1600 - 1699)	196



## Installation

## **Driver Information**

## **Supported Features**

- Supports 256 LUNs (0-255)
- Supports dynamically adding LUNs and targets
- Simplified driver installation
- Topology support: FC-AL, point-to-point, fabric with auto-topology negotiation
- Support for 1, 2 and 4 Gb with auto-rate negotiation
- Protocols: SCSI/FC, IP/FC
- Persistent bindings by WWNN, WWPN or D\_ID (different methods can be set on an adapter port basis)
- Tested for up to thirty-two host bus adapter (HBA) ports
- Monitoring, parameter configuration and binding settings using Emulex's HBAnyware™ graphical user interface utility
- Parameter configuration using Emulex's LightPulse® lputil console application utility
- Support for Common HBA API
- Ipfc.conf migration script. This script enables you to convert 5.0x lpfc.conf syntax to 6.x lpfc.conf syntax. The script, update\_lpfc, is bundled with the driver kit and is installed in the /usr/sbin/lpfc directory
- Dynamic target/LUN discovery (HBA automatically discovers new targets Administrator assigns SCSI ID using the HBAnyware utility)
- Dynamic parameter setting
- Dynamic persistent binding
- Unused devices in sd.conf no longer take up memory
- Support for Dynamic Reconfiguration (DR). Driver version 6.x includes DR enhancements for SunFire 12K, 15K, E20K and E25K. (see "Compatibility" on page 2 for prerequisites)
- Improved scheduler algorithm addressing potential LUN starvation in specific environments
- FDMI extension Host Name support
- Includes the HBAnyware utility as part of master kit: enabling GUI-based driver configuration and persistent binding management, including Out-of-Band (OOB) management capability and diagnostics (loopback and diagnostics dump)
- Supports 4 Gigabit/sec adapters with 1, 2, and 4 Gigabit auto-rate negotiation



#### **New Features in this Release**

The Emulex Driver for Solaris version 6.11c includes the following enhancements:

- MSI support for LP10000, LP10000DC, LP11000 and LP11002 HBAs
- MSI MultiMessaging support for LPe11000 and LPe11002 HBAs
- HBAnyware utility version 3.1 with Out-of-Band (OOB) management capability and diagnostics including loopback and diagnostics dump. HBAnyware 3.1 enables you to start the HBAnyware utility directly from your Web browser. See page 23 for more information about HBAnyware with Web Launch.
- Improves performance because the driver is multi-threaded.
- Isolates Dynamic Reconfiguration (DR) failure through a "rcm script" named lpfc.hpdr.
- Maintenance fixes

#### Prerequisites

- SPARC-based system
- Solaris 8 (32 and 64-bit), Solaris 9 (32 and 64-bit) or Solaris 10 (32 and 64-bit)

#### Compatibility

- LP11002 and LP11000 (minimum firmware version 2.10a10. Firmware version 2.70a5 is recommended for best performance.)
- LPe11002 and LPe11000 (minimum firmware version 2.50a4. Firmware version 2.70a5 is recommended for best performance.)
- LP10000DC and LP10000 (minimum firmware version 1.90a4)
- LP9802DC (minimum firmware version 1.90a4)
- LP9802 (minimum firmware version 1.90a4)
- LP9402DC, LP9002DC, LP9002L and LP9000 (minimum firmware version 3.90a7)
- LP8000 and LP8000DC
  - If your HBA has a Dragonfly chip version 2.00 or greater, use firmware version 3.90a7.
  - If your HBA has a Dragonfly chip below version 2.00, use firmware version 3.30a7.

Refer to the LP8000 and LP8000DC Firmware Download page on the Emulex Web site to determine the Dragonfly chip version in use.

- Minimum OpenBoot PROM (OBP) levels:
  - Sun Fire 4800 OBP 5.15.2.
  - Sun Fire V880 OBP 4.7.5.
  - Enterprise 3500/4500 OBP 3.2.30.
  - Enterprise 250/450 OBP 3.26.0.



- Emulex recommends OpenBoot version 1.41a4 for all PCI HBAs for best DR compatibility.
- Emulex recommends OpenBoot version 2.41a5 for all SBus HBAs for best DR compatibility.

#### **Important Files**

You may need to modify the following configuration files after you install the driver. You might also need to modify one or more of these files if your hardware configuration changes. For example, you may want to add additional disk drives to the Fibre Channel interface. Refer to the Configuration section of this manual for more information about modifying these files.

#### Table 1: Important Files

File	Description
lpfc.conf	Configuration file specifying tunable parameters for all LightPulse adapters attached to the host machine; this file is located where you installed the driver, e.g., in /platform/ <arch>/kernel/drv or in /kernel/drv.</arch>
/kernel/drv/sd.conf	Options for the SCSI disk driver.
/kernel/drv/st.conf	Options for the SCSI tape driver.
/etc/hostname.lpfc<0-N>	Configuration files specifying adapters for use with IP networking. For each LightPulse adapter involved in networking, there must be a hostname.lpfc<0-N> file in /etc containing the host's name on that network. <b>Note:</b> You do not need these files if the driver is only used for SCSI support.
/etc/system	Host-wide tunable parameters.



## Things to Know Before You Download

• Before you download, create a temporary directory for the download package.

# **Caution:** Installing version 6.11c of the driver for Solaris may be significantly different than in previous releases. Precisely follow the instructions for initial installation. Failure to follow these steps could render your system inoperable.

If you are updating the driver from version 6.00 or later to 6.11c in any system, refer to the following update procedure:

#### Updating a PCI Driver (from Version 6.x) for PCI and PCI-Express HBAs on page 13.

If you are updating the driver from version 5.00i or later to 6.11c in any system, refer to the following update procedure:

#### Updating a PCI Driver (from Version 5.x) for PCI and PCI-Express HBAs on page 13.

If you are updating the driver from version 4.21e or earlier to version 6.11c, refer to the appropriate update procedure:

#### Updating a PCI Driver (from Version 4.x) for PCI and PCI-Express HBAs on page 15. Updating an SBus Driver (from Version 4.x) on page 16. Updating PCI and SBus Drivers in One System (from Version 4.x) for PCI and PCI-Express HBAs on page 17.

After you install the driver, you must install the utility package, which includes lputil, HBAnyware and the HBA API libraries. The lputil utility is no longer included in the driver kit.

#### Installing Driver Utilities on page 18.

As a matter of course, you should always make a full system backup prior to beginning an installation or update procedure.

- If you are currently running an older version of the Emulex driver for Solaris, the update procedure includes removing the old driver.
- Before upgrading the driver, you must uninstall any previously installed utilities. Refer to the "Uninstalling the Utilities" section on page 17 for instructions.
- /etc/hostname.lpfc<0-N> configuration files specifying adapters for use with IP networking. For each LightPulse HBA involved in networking, there must be a hostname.lpfc<0-N> file in /etc containing the host's name on that network.

Note: These files are not required if the driver is being used for SCSI support only.



## **Known Issues**

The following issues have been reported at the time of publication. These issues may not yet have been verified or confirmed and may apply to another product, such as the driver or hardware.

#### FCP

#### Discovering Disk Drives: drvconfig(1M) and disks(1M)

Solaris provides a utility, drvconfig(1M), which probes for new hardware added after the system is booted. Run drvconfig, then run disks to acquire access to new devices.

Sometimes, the Emulex driver for Solaris recognizes disk drives at boot time, but you cannot use those drives because special file entries for them do not exist. In that case, run the disks(1M) command to create the special file entries in /dev/dsk and /dev/rdsk. In some cases, you may need to first run drvconfig(1M), which creates the /devices tree, and then run disks(1M). Since Solaris 8, drvconfig(1M) and disks(1M) are replaced by the command devfsadm(1M).

Finally, in extreme cases, do the following, as 'root':

- # touch /reconfigure
- # reboot

A reconfiguration reboot makes Solaris rediscover all possible devices at boot time.

#### **Different SCSI Target IDs on Different Hosts**

A Fibre Channel target is assigned its D\_ID at loop initialization time; the SCSI target ID for that target is assigned by the device driver when the device is first discovered. It is possible for the D\_ID to change between one loop initialization and the next. Every time a system boots or a target is added to or removed from the Fibre Channel, the loop will be re-initialized. After a system has booted, it will maintain a constant view of the same target ID because the driver software remaps the SCSI target ID to the new D\_ID on the fly. However, a second system may use a different SCSI target ID for that target. If you want to work with the same target across multiple hosts, you may find the same Fibre Channel target is known by different SCSI target IDs. Use the persistent binding feature to maintain a consistent target ID on all systems.

#### IP

#### **Promiscuous Mode**

The Emulex driver for Solaris supports promiscuous mode. However, promiscuous mode on Fibre Channel works differently than you might expect compared to promiscuous mode on Ethernet.

Promiscuous mode allows system administrators and others to do things such as run tcpdump and other utilities to find out what packets are being sent from or received by a node on a network. Unlike a true Ethernet driver, the Emulex driver working in promiscuous mode does not really receive all the packets going over the wire. Fibre Channel, unlike Ethernet, is not a broadcast medium. When promiscuous mode is enabled on the host machine, only the packets sent between the host machine and another machine can be seen. Packets sent between other machines cannot be seen. This restriction is a property of Fibre Channel itself.

An artifact of the driver's implementation also means that packets may not be reported in order. Sometimes a TCP acknowledgment packet can be sent back up a promiscuous STREAM before transmitted data packets are themselves sent up that STREAM.

Networking throughput decreases and latency increases for all packets sent or received through lpfc while promiscuous mode is enabled. Promiscuous mode forces a data copy for each incoming packet to make a duplicate copy for the socket operating in promiscuous mode. Another side effect of promiscuous mode is an increase in memory use.



#### **Common Issues**

#### Adapter Attach Failure

Some versions of SPARC OBP (Open Boot Prom) do not properly recognize the Emulex HBA PCI registers. When this happens the lpfc driver will not successfully load and attach at system boot time and a WARNING message similar to the following example will be displayed:

```
WARNING: /pci@9,2000/pci10df,1ae5@2 (lpfc0):
Adapter Attach Failure
Unable to map SLIM memory: 0xfffffff9
```

You are most likely to encounter this failure on Ultra Enterprise servers that are being retrofitted with Sunfire PCI I/O HBAs; other Ultra machines with built-in PCI support were manufactured after this OBP problem was identified and fixed. In any case, you should immediately contact Sun to upgrade your OBP. In the meantime, there is a workaround for this problem, by adding a property to the HBA driver's lpfc.conf configuration file. This workaround only permits the use of a single HBA in the system; more than one HBA may not be used in conjunction with this workaround.

Begin by obtaining the PCI Bus and Device numbers for the HBA. The PCI Bus and Device numbers can be obtained by examining the OBP properties for your device before booting. In our example, the device is identified in the WARNING message. Use the device information to navigate the OBP device properties tree to obtain the desired information. At the ok prompt from OBP, type the following (your input is underlined, the information you seek is underlined and boldfaced, and the rest is output from OBP):

<pre>{0} ok cd /pci@9,20 {0} ok .properties</pre>	000,	/pc:	i100	df,1	lae	5										
assigned-addresses	83	80	10	10	00	00	00	00	00	00	20	00	00	00	00	00
power-consumption	000	000	000													
	006	e4e	1c0													
reg	00	301	<u>00</u> 00	000	000	000	000	000	000	00	000	000	00	000	000	
-	03 <u>8</u>	301	<u>0</u> 10	000	000	000	000	000	000	00	000	000	00	000	ff8	
	03 <u>8</u>	301	<u>0</u> 18	000	000	000	000	000	000	00	000	000	00	000	0£8	
	018	3010	020	000	000	000	000	000	000	00	000	000	00	000	100	
name	pc	L100	df,1	lae	5											
66mhz-capable	00	00	00	00												
udf-supported	00	00	00	00												
fast-back-to-back	00	00	00	01												
devsel-speed	00	00	00	01												
class-code	00	0c	04	00												
interrupts	000	000	001													
max-latency	00	00	00	00												
min-grant	00	00	00	08												
revision-id	00	00	00	02												
device-id	00	00	1a	e5												
vendor-id	00	00	10	df												
{0} ok																

The values returned by OBP for the reg property, in the locations indicated by the boldfaced and underlined text in the above example, are the sought-after PCI Bus and Device numbers. Of the four digits reported by OBP, the first two are the PCI Bus number and the second two are the Device number. So, in our example, the PCI Bus number is 80 and the Device number is 10. (These values are in hexadecimal.) These values may be different on your system. Now, add a reg property to the lpfc.conf file, of the following form (there is a commented out example in the installed lpfc.conf):

```
reg = 0x00BBDD00, 0x00000000, 0x0000000, 0x00000000,
0x00000000, # PCI
0x02BBDD10, 0x00000000, 0x00000000, 0x00000000, 0x00001000, # SLIM
0x02BBDD18, 0x00000000, 0x00000000, 0x00000000, 0x00000100; # CSRs
```

In place of BB in the previous example, use the PCI Bus number you obtained from OBP; in place of DD in the above example, use the Device number you obtained from OBP. In the example, you would add the following reg property to lpfc.conf (the BB and DD values we inserted are underlined and boldfaced):

reg = 0x00<u>8010</u>00, 0x0000000, 0x0000000, 0x00000000, 0x00000000, # PCI 0x02<u>8010</u>10, 0x00000000, 0x00000000, 0x00000000, 0x00001000, # SLIM 0x02<u>8010</u>18, 0x00000000, 0x00000000, 0x00000000, 0x00000100; # CSRs

Adding this information to the lpfc.conf file will override the erroneous reg property created by OBP and allow the lpfc driver to be loaded and attached. No additional changes should be needed. However, this workaround only permits the use of a single HBA in the system. Because the PCI Bus and Device numbers are now hard coded in the lpfc.conf file, all HBAs will be assigned the same Bus and Device numbers, which could not possibly work correctly. To operate more than one HBA in the same system, you must obtain an OBP upgrade. For more information about the OBP PCI register sets, please refer to the IEEE 1275 PCI Bus Bindings specification, and to the Solaris pci(4) manual page.

#### Drive light turns out

Typically, the drive light does not turn on again by itself. The drive will come back on when a command to it times out and the driver tries to abort the command; or it may turn on at the next loop event. Contact the drive manufacturer for new firmware to fix the problem.

#### LIP type F8

Some disk drive firmware does not recover from a LIP type F8 in the way expected by other Fibre Channel devices; the result can be a loop full of devices that are all hopelessly confused. Reboot all the hosts involved and power cycle all the disk drives involved.

Unfortunately, it may be difficult to realize that an F8 LIP has happened: subsequent loop events may obscure the relevant log messages on the console or in the system log. The Emulex Digital Hub will bypass devices sending LIP F8, and keep the loop up and running.

#### Drive Firmware Update After Labeling Isn't Reported

If the drive firmware is updated after the disk is labeled by Solaris, the new firmware revision is not reflected in the Solaris disk label. Solaris stores the firmware revision number in the disk's ASCII name in the Solaris disk label; where it is displayed by the format command. If you update the drive's firmware, you must do an explicit inquiry command from within format to see the change, re-labeling doesn't help. Try re-formatting the disk.

**Note:** On Solaris/SPARC systems with the sd driver, disks labeled by Solaris/x86 aren't recognized and are reported as having "corrupt" labels; in that case, Solaris will issue an inquiry, so in this instance Solaris/SPARC will accurately report the updated firmware revision.

#### fsck Through Block Device Fails

Using fsck against the block- instead of the character-special device can result in error messages about unreadable blocks and then messages about partially allocated inodes, unknown file types and other unusual problems. Damage to the slice will result. Using the character-special device always works correctly.

#### Fibre Channel Network Doesn't Operate After pkgadd and reboot

Immediately after doing pkgadd and rebooting, lpfc isn't configured. An additional reboot is required to cure the problem. Sometimes, you may have to reboot a third time. Follow the installation instructions in this manual to avoid the problem.



#### **OBP** Fails to Recognize LightPulse Correctly

SPARC systems with older Open Boot Prom revisions may fail to recognize the HBA. The lpfc driver will print out warning messages about being unable to configure the HBA. You must upgrade the OBP firmware or employ a workaround.

#### Leadville Considerations

Beginning with Solaris 10 update 1, the Emulex Leadville FCA driver is bundled with the operating system. When the lpfc driver is installed on Solaris 10 update 1 (or later), the lpfc driver will not claim most of the HBAs, since they are already claimed by the emlxs driver. To change the driver HBA bindings, run the emlxdrv utility. This utility enables you choose which driver (lpfc or emlxs) controls the Emulex HBAs in the system. This utility is available on the Emulex Web site. The emlxdrv utility is in the emlxu utility package.

**Note:** The same problem will occur when the SUNWemlxs package is installed on any Solaris version. For example, if SAN Foundation Suite 4.4.10 is applied to the system without the lpfc driver present, all HBAs will be under emlxs control. In this case you must use the emlxdrv utility to change the ownership from emlxs to lpfc.



## Installing the Emulex Driver for Solaris Version 6.11c

## Introduction

Installing version 6.11c of the Emulex driver for Solaris is the same as installing version 6.0x. Precisely follow the instructions for initial installation. Failure to follow these steps could render your system inoperable.

The Emulex driver for Solaris download package, which you download from the Emulex Web site, includes a tar file for the driver and a tar file for the driver utilities (Iputil, HBAnyware and HBA API files). When you install the download package, you will perform the following steps:

- 1. Perform the appropriate driver installation or upgrade procedure:
  - Install a Driver for the First Time on this page.
  - If you are updating the driver from version 6.00 or later to 6.11c in any system, refer to the following update procedure:
    - Update a PCI Driver (from Version 6.x) on page 13.
  - If you are updating the driver from version 5.00i or later to 6.11c in any system, refer to the following update procedure:
    - Update a PCI Driver (from Version 5.x) on page 13.
  - If you are updating the driver from version 4.21e or earlier to version 6.11c, refer to the appropriate update procedure:
    - Update a PCI Driver (from Version 4.x) on page 15.
    - Update an SBus Driver (from Version 4.x) on page 16.
    - Update PCI and SBus Drivers in One System (from Version 4.x) on page 17.
- 2. Install the driver utilities on page 18.

**Note:** The HBAnyware and LightPulse (lputil) utilities are bundled together and must be installed separately from the driver. Refer to the "Installing the Utilities" section of this manual for more information.

#### Leadville Considerations

Beginning with Solaris 10 update 1, the Emulex Leadville FCA driver is bundled with the operating system. When the lpfc driver is installed on Solaris 10 update 1 (or later), the lpfc driver will not claim most of the HBAs, since they are already claimed by the emlxs driver. To change the driver HBA bindings, run the emlxdrv utility. This utility enables you choose which driver (lpfc or emlxs) controls the Emulex HBAs in the system. This utility is available on the Emulex Web site. The emlxdrv utility is in the emlxu utility package.

**Note:** The same problem will occur when the SUNWemlxs package is installed on any Solaris version. For example, if SAN Foundation Suite 4.4.10 is applied to the system without the lpfc driver present, all HBAs will be under emlxs control. In this case you must use the emlxdrv utility to change the ownership from emlxs to lpfc.

## Installing the Driver for the First Time

To install the Emulex driver for Solaris for the first time:

- 1. Login as or su to 'root'.
- 2. Load the package from your distribution medium into a directory, referred to here as <whereyou-put-it>. The driver is a regular tar file, named lpfc-6.11c-sparc.tar.
- 3. Change to the <where-you-put-it> directory. Type:

cd <where-you-put-it>

4. Extract the installation image from the tar file. Type:

tar xvf lpfc-6.11c-sparc.tar

5. At the shell prompt, type:

pkgadd -d `pwd`

If you are installing the lpfc driver on an alternate root, type: pkgadd -R <alt-root> -d `pwd`

6. Answer the following question:

```
Select package(s) you wish to process (or 'all' to process all packages). (default: all) [?,??,q]:
```

7. Select the number associated with lpfc for installation. If you need help, type? or ??. You will see some additional questions related to directories. Ordinarily, the defaults are sufficient. To select a default press <Enter>.

a. Answer the question:

Rebuild manual pages database for section 7d [y,n,?]:

Manual pages for lpfc are installed in section 7d of the online man pages. Normally the catman command can be run to create preformatted versions of the on-line manual from the nroff(1) input files. Each manual page is examined and those whose preformatted versions are missing or out of date are recreated. If any changes are made, catman recreates the windex database. Depending on your system, this operation can take anywhere from 1 to 10 minutes. If you type n, the catman will be skipped which will allow the installation to complete quickly. The catman command skipped will be output for the administrator to run at a later point in time, if desired.

b. The next question you will see is:

Use IP networking over Fibre Channel [y,n,?]:

Answer Yes if you wish to enable IP or No if you do not wish to enable IP.

8. Continue with the installation by answering Yes to the following:

Do you want to continue with the installation of <lpfc> [y,n,?]:

9. The install package provides running commentary on the installation process. Be sure to examine the output for any errors or warnings. When the installation concludes, take notice of the message:

```
SCSI: If you are using lpfc to access disks, be sure to check the configuration file of your SCSI target driver (presumably sd.conf) to ensure that the driver will probe for all of the targets/luns in your environment.
```

10. Finally you will be asked:

```
Select package(s) you wish to process (or 'all' to process all
packages). (default: all) [?,??,q]:
```



This is the same question that began your session. If you do not want to install additional packages, type q. The lpfc driver installation is now complete. After you quit, you will see the following message:

\*\*\*IMPORTANT NOTICE \*\*\* This machine must now be rebooted in order to ensure safe operation.

At this point the driver is loaded and automapped targets are visible to the system, the HBAnyware utility and the lputil utility.

- 11. Before you reboot the machine, consider whether you must modify any configuration files, beyond the defaults established by the installation process.
  - a. Run the HBAnyware utility to inspect the driver's configuration parameters or view the /kernel/drv/lpfc.conf file. (See the Configuration section for details on starting and running the HBAnyware utility.) If necessary, change settings as you deem appropriate. However, the defaults are likely to be satisfactory. You can find lpfc.conf in the /kernel/drv if the driver was installed referencing the root directory.
  - b. If you have FCP targets with multiple LUNs, add configuration entries for them to /kernel/drv/sd.conf. These files were set up by the installation process to probe for some FCP targets on the loop - but only for LUN 0 on some targets. If you have FCP devices with multiple LUNs or target IDs greater than 17, you must modify sd.conf to find them at boot time.
  - c. If you have more than one LightPulse adapter that will be configured for IP networking in the host, you must create an address file for each additional adapter. The installation process created /etc/hostname.lpfc0 for the first adapter.
- 12. Reboot the system to ensure proper operation, if networking was enabled during installation or if non-dynamic driver parameters were changed. At the shell prompt, type the following:
  - # sync
  - # reboot

The system will reboot to multi-user mode and the Emulex LightPulse driver is available for use.

If you are enabling IP networking, you may find after rebooting the system in step 10 that FCP disk access works but host-to-host IP access does not work. The lpfc network interface isn't configured; as Solaris boots, it will print out an error message when configuring lpfc0, the Fibre Channel network, indicating that there is no such interface. Running netstat -i will also reveal that there is no lpfc interface. In this case, you must reboot the machine a second time. In certain rare cases, it may be necessary to reboot the machine a third time. Be careful, though: if netstat -i shows an lpfc interface, but the network still isn't being started, you probably have an error in your hostname.lpfc<0-N> file or some other error in your network configuration files.

#### Installing the Driver as a Loadable Kernel Module

When installing the device driver as a loadable kernel module, you must use supported versions of the hardware and software. Refer to the Compatability section of the manual. Read the Configuration section before you start the installation.

To load the driver as a loadable module:

- 1. Login as or su to 'root'.
- 2. Type:

```
modload /kernel/drv/lpfc (for 32-bit platforms) or
modload /kernel/drv/sparcv9/lpfc (for 64-bit platforms)
```



3. Type:

```
cfgadm
```

Identify and record the Ap\_Id's of all the Emulex LightPulse adapters on the system.

4. Type:

```
cfgadm -c configure <Ap_Id>
```

for each of the Emulex LightPulse adapters.

To unload the driver:

- 1. Login as or su to 'root'.
- 2. Un-mount all the filesystems that belong to the lpfc driver.
- 3. Un-plumb all IP interfaces that belong to the lpfc driver, if networking is enabled on the lpfc driver.
- 4. Stop all HBAnyware/elxhbamgr processes.
- 5. Type:

```
cfgadm
```

Record the Ap\_Id's of all the Emulex LightPulse adapters on the system.

6. Type:

```
cfgadm -c unconfigure <Ap_Id>
```

for each of the Emulex LightPulse adapters.

7. Type:

```
modunload -i <module_id>
```

where <module\_id> is the id of the lpfc driver. This id can be obtained by running modinfo.

## **RCM Script**

The lpfc 6.11c driver includes a rcmscript(4) named lpfc,hpdr. The driver package installs the rcmscript under /usr/lib/rcm/scripts. If a dynamic reconfiguration (DR) operation is attempted to remove an lpfc instance, the DR operation will fail if the rcpscript detects the HBAnyware utility and/or lputil utility process on the system.

**Note:** The rcmscript does not detect the presence of any third party management applications that may be accessing the lpfc adapters via libhbapi(3LIB). Before attempting to unconfigure a lpfc instance, please stop all applications that are accessing the lpfc instances.

## **Updating Existing Drivers**

Use the following procedures to update an existing driver:

- Update a PCI Driver (from Version 6.X) for PCI and PCI-Express HBAs on page 13.
- Update a PCI Driver (from Version 5.X) for PCI and PCI-Express HBAs on page 13.
- Update a PCI Driver (from Version 4.X) for PCI and PCI-Express HBAs on page 15.
- Update an SBus Driver (from Version 4.X) on page 16.
- Update PCI and SBus Drivers (from Version 4.X) for PCI and PCI-Express HBAs in One System on page 17.



## Updating a PCI Driver (from Version 6.X) for PCI and PCI-Express HBAs

The driver can be updated by saving certain driver configuration files and using pkgrm. Two files are saved when a pkgrm is performed.

- The /kernel/drv/lpfc.conf file is moved to /usr/tmp/lpfc.conf.pkgrm to allow you to restore any customized parameter settings after installing a new device driver.
- The file /kernel/drv/sd.conf is copied to /usr/tmp/sd.conf.pkgrm. The file must be copied, because the sd driver still needs this file. Additionally any lpfc specific settings in the original file are deleted by the pkgrm process.

After installing a new device driver, the saved files can be used to restore all the customized disk settings.

**WARNING:** The 6.11c driver adds a few new configuration parameters, deprecates a few, and renames a couple of old parameters. Do NOT replace the current lpfc.conf with lpfc.conf from a previous release.

**Note:** Before upgrading the driver, you must uninstall any previously installed utilities. Refer to the "Uninstalling the Utilities" section on page 17 for instructions.

To update the driver:

- 1. Make a full system backup.
- 2. Login as 'root', or su to 'root'.
- 3. Save the file /etc/path\_to\_inst to /usr/tmp/path\_to\_inst.lpfc. The /etc/path\_to\_inst file is not saved when a pkgrm is performed.
- 4. At the shell prompt, type:

pkgrm lpfc

- 5. Copy the file /usr/tmp/path\_to\_inst.lpfc back to /etc/path\_to\_inst.
- 6. Install the new driver package. Type:

pkgadd -d `pwd`

- 7. Restore any customized parameter settings in sd.conf and lpfc.conf:
  - Copy the /usr/tmp/sd.conf.pkgrm file back to /kernel/drv/sd.conf.
  - Update the configuration parameters in /kernel/drv/lpfc.conf with the values from /usr/tmp/lpfc.conf.pkgrm.
- 8. Reboot the system.

## Updating a PCI Driver (from Version 5.X) for PCI and PCI-Express HBAs

The driver can be updated by saving certain driver configuration files and using pkgrm. Two files are saved when a pkgrm is performed.

- The /kernel/drv/lpfc.conf file is moved to /usr/tmp/lpfc.conf.pkgrm to allow you to restore any customized parameter settings after installing a new device driver.
- The file /kernel/drv/sd.conf is copied to /usr/tmp/sd.conf.pkgrm. The file must be copied, because the sd driver still needs this file. Additionally any lpfc specific settings in the original file are deleted by the pkgrm process.



After installing a new device driver, the saved files can be used to restore all the customized disk settings.

**WARNING:** The 6.11c driver adds a few new configuration parameters, deprecates a few, and renames a couple of old parameters. Do NOT replace the current lpfc.conf with lpfc.conf from a previous release.

**Note:** Before upgrading the driver, you must uninstall any previously installed utilities. Refer to the "Uninstalling the Utilities" section on page 17 for instructions.

To update the driver:

- 1. Make a full system backup.
- 2. Login as 'root', or su to 'root'.
- 3. Save the file /etc/path\_to\_inst to /usr/tmp/path\_to\_inst.lpfc. The /etc/path\_to\_inst file is not saved when a pkgrm is performed.
- 4. At the shell prompt, type:

pkgrm lpfc

- 5. Copy the file /usr/tmp/path\_to\_inst.lpfc back to /etc/path\_to\_inst.
- 6. Install the new driver package. Type:

pkgadd -d `pwd`

- 7. Restore any customized parameter settings in sd.conf and lpfc.conf:
  - Copy the /usr/tmp/sd.conf.pkgrm file back to /kernel/drv/sd.conf.
  - Update the configuration parameters in /kernel/drv/lpfc.conf with the values from /usr/tmp/lpfc.conf.pkgrm. This can be done without manual intervention by using the tool /usr/sbin/lpfc/update\_lpfc. Refer to "update\_lpfc" on this page for more information on the tool.
- 8. Examine the file /tmp/lpfc.conf and make sure the tool has migrated the user settings from 5.x to 6.x correctly. Copy the file /tmp/lpf.conf back to /kernel/drv/lpfc.conf
- 9. Reboot the system.

#### update\_lpfc

update\_lpfc is a simple conversion tool used to upgrade the Solaris lpfc driver from versions 5.01x or 5.02x to versions 6.00g, 6.01c, 6.01f, 6.02e, 6.02f, 6.02g, 6.10g or 6.11c. This tool converts the older lpfc.conf files to the proper 6.x syntax.

#### Usage:

/usr/sbin/lpfc/update\_lpfc <lpfc.conf.5x> <lpfc.conf.6x>

The script extracts relevant information (user updates) from the original lpfc.conf (5x) and applies them to the new lpfc.conf (6x). The tool does not modify either of the input files. The output is directed to stdout. The tool employs sed and nawk to process the information from the lpfc.conf file.

#### Caveats

- The tool does not check for syntax in the original lpfc.conf file. The tool also does not validate the values of the configuration parameters, except for the ones described below. It is assumed that the original lpfc.conf is a working file.
- Comments from the original lpfc.conf are ignored.



- All configuration parameter assignments should start on column 1. There should be no leading white spaces in the configuration parameter assignments in the original lpfc.conf file.
- The user defined persistent bindings should not be interspersed with comments. For example, the following persistent bindings will not be translated to 6.x correctly.

```
fcp-bind-DID="0000ef:lpfc0t3",
# "0000e8:lpfc0t4;
"0000e4:lpfc0t4";
```

- The permissible values for the configuration parameter 'automap' have changed in the 6.x driver. The permissible values are 0 and 1. If 'automap' was set to 1, 2, or 3 in the original lpfc.conf file, then the tool will change this value to 1.
- The 'fcp-bind-method' parameter is new to lpfc 6.x driver. The tool sets 'fcp-bind-method' based on the type of persistent bindings used in the original lpfc.conf file. If persistent bindings are not defined in the original lpfc.conf file, then the tool sets 'fcp-bind-method' based on the automap parameter from the original lpfc.conf file.
- If 'scan-down' was set to 2 in the original lpfc.conf, then the tool will set 'scan-down' to 1. The 6.x lpfc driver does not allow a 'scan-down' value of 2.
- The deprecated lpfc.conf parameters are not carried over.
- If the configuration parameters 'cr-count', 'num-bufs' and 'num-iocbs' are set to their default settings in the original lpfc.conf, then the tool will update the values of these parameters to their new defaults.

## Updating a PCI Driver (from Version 4.X) for PCI and PCI-Express HBAs

The driver can be updated by saving certain driver configuration files and using pkgrm. Two files are saved when a pkgrm is performed:

- The /kernel/drv/lpfc.conf file is moved to /usr/tmp/lpfc.conf.pkgrm to allow you to restore any customized parameter settings after installing a new device driver.
- The /kernel/drv/sd.conf file is copied to /usr/tmp/sd.conf.pkgrm because the pkgrm process deletes any lpfc specific settings in the original file. After installing a new device driver, the saved file can be used to restore all the customized disk settings.

**WARNING:** The 6.11c driver adds a few new configuration parameters, deprecates a few, and renames a couple of old parameters. Do NOT replace the current lpfc.conf with lpfc.conf from a previous release.

**Note:** Before upgrading the driver, you must uninstall any previously installed utilities. Refer to the "Uninstalling the Utilities" section on page 17 for instructions.

To update the driver:

- 1. Make a full system backup.
- 2. Login as or su to 'root'.
- 3. Save the file /etc/path\_to\_inst to /usr/tmp/path\_to\_inst.lpfc. The /etc/path\_to\_inst file is not saved when a pkgrm is performed.
- 4. At the shell prompt, type:

pkgrm lpfc

5. Copy the file /usr/tmp/path\_to\_inst.lpfc back to /etc/path\_to\_inst.



6. Install the new driver package. Type:

pkgadd -d `pwd`

- 7. Restore any customized parameter settings in sd.conf and lpfc.conf:
  - Copy the /usr/tmp/sd.conf.pkgrm file back to /kernel/drv/sd.conf.
  - Update the configuration parameters in /kernel/drv/lpfc.conf with the values from /usr/tmp/lpfc.conf.pkgrm.
- 8. Reboot the system.

## Updating an SBus Driver (from Version 4.X)

If you are updating from the 4.x SBUS driver, carefully follow the directions in this section.

The driver can be updated by saving certain driver configuration files and using pkgrm. Two files are saved when a pkgrm is performed.

- The /kernel/drv/lpfs.conf file is moved to /usr/tmp/lpfs.conf.pkgrm to allow you to restore any customized parameter settings after installing a new device driver.
- The /kernel/drv/sd.conf file is copied to /usr/tmp/sd.conf.pkgrm because the pkgrm process deletes any lpfs specific settings in the original file. After installing a new device driver, the saved file can be used to restore all the customized disk settings.

**WARNING:** The 6.11c driver adds a few new configuration parameters, deprecates a few, and renames a couple of old parameters. Do NOT replace the current lpfc.conf with lpfc.conf from a previous release.

**Note:** Before upgrading the driver, you must uninstall any previously installed utilities. Refer to the "Uninstalling the Utilities" section on page 17 for instructions.

To update the driver:

- 1. Make a full system backup.
- 2. Login as 'root', or su to 'root'.
- 3. Save the file /etc/path\_to\_inst to /usr/tmp/path\_to\_inst.lpfs. This file is not saved when a pkgrm is performed.
- 4. At the shell prompt, type:

pkgrm lpfs

- 5. Copy the file /usr/tmp/path\_to\_inst.lpfs back to /etc/path\_to\_inst.
- 6. Install the new driver package. Type:

pkgadd -d `pwd`

Caution: lpfs will be renamed to lpfc and the instance number of lpfs will be modified in the /etc/ path\_to\_inst file.

The following messages for lpfs devices will be save into the file /usr/tmp/lpfs\_new\_instance when installation completed:

```
Move lpfs0 to lpfc0
Move lpfs1 to lpfc1
```

Write down those messages, you will need them at the next step.

7. To restore any customized parameter settings in sd.conf and lpfc.conf, follow these instructions:



- Copy the /usr/tmp/sd.conf.pkgrm file back to /kernel/drv/sd.conf.
- Rename "lpfs" to "lpfc" in both /usr/tmp/lpfc.conf.pkgrm and /kernel/drv/sd.conf files.
- Replace the old lpfs instance number to the new lpfc instance number in the /usr/tmp/ lpfc.conf.pkgrm file.
- Update the configuration parameters in /kernel/drv/lpfc.conf with the values from /usr/ tmp/lpfc.conf.pkgrm.
- 8. Reboot the system.

## Updating PCI and SBus Drivers (from Version 4.X) for PCI and PCI-Express HBAs in One System

This procedure describes how to update Solaris driver version 4.x to version 6.11c on a system with both PCI and SBus Emulex HBAs installed.

The driver can be updated by saving certain driver configuration files and using pkgrm. Two files are saved when a pkgrm is performed:

- For 4.x PCI drivers, lpfc, the /kernel/drv/lpfc.conf file is moved to /usr/tmp/lpfc.conf.pkgrm to allow you to restore any customized parameter settings after installing a new device driver.
- For 4.x SBUS drivers, lpfs, the /kernel/drv/lpfs.conf file is moved to /usr/tmp/lpfs.conf.pkgrm.
- The file /kernel/drv/sd.conf is copied to /usr/tmp/sd.conf.pkgrm because the pkgrm process deletes any lpfc or lpfs specific settings in the original file depending on removing lpfc or lpfs. After installing a new device driver, the saved file can be used to restore all the customized disk settings.

**WARNING:** The 6.11c driver adds a few new configuration parameters, deprecates a few, and renames a couple of old parameters. Do NOT replace the current lpfc.conf with lpfc.conf from a previous release.

**Note:** Before upgrading the driver, you must uninstall any previously installed utilities. Refer to the "Uninstalling the Utilities" section on page 17 for instructions.

To update and merge the drivers:

- 1. Make a full system backup.
- 2. Login as 'root', or su to 'root'.
- 3. Save the file /etc/path\_to\_inst to /usr/tmp/path\_to\_inst.lpfc. The /etc/path\_to\_inst file is not saved when a pkgrm is performed.
- 4. Save the file /kernel/drv/sd.conf to /usr/tmp/sd.conf.lpfc. This step is needed because the /kernel/drv/sd.conf.pkgrm does not have the correct setting after step 4 and 5 are performed.
- 5. At the shell prompt, type:

pkgrm lpfs

6. At the shell prompt, type:

pkgrm lpfc

7. Copy the file /usr/tmp/path\_to\_inst.lpfc back to /etc/path\_to\_inst.

8. Install the new driver package. Type:

pkgadd -d `pwd`

Caution: lpfs will be renamed to lpfc and the instance number of lpfs will be modified in the file /etc/path\_to\_inst.

The following messages for lpfs devices will be save into the file /usr/tmp/lpfs\_new\_instance when installation completed.

Move lpfs0 to lpfc0 Move lpfs1 to lpfc1

Write down those messages, you will need them at the next step.

- 9. To restore any customized parameter settings in sd.conf and lpfc.conf, follow these instructions:
  - a. Copy the /usr/tmp/sd.conf.lpfc file back to /kernel/drv/sd.conf.
  - b. Merge the files /usr/tmp/lpfs.conf.pkgrm and /usr/tmp/lpfc.conf.pkgrm into /usr/tmp/ lpfc.conf.
  - c. Rename "lpfs" to "lpfc " in both /usr/tmp/lpfc.conf and /kernel/drv/sd.conf files.
  - d. Replace the old lpfs instance number to the new lpfc instance number in the /usr/tmp/ lpfc.conf file.
  - e. Update the configuration parameters in /kernel/drv/lpfc.conf with the values from /usr/ tmp/lpfc.conf.

10. Reboot the system.

## **Directory Structure**

After installation, the following directories are created on the system.

#### Table 2: Directory Structure

Directory	Description			
/usr/sbin/lpfc	Driver utilities (This directory is created after the utilities are installed.)			
/usr/sbin/hbanyware	HBAnyware utility files (This directory is created after the utilities are installed.)			

## **Installing the Utilities**

Follow these instructions to install the HBAnyware and lputil utilities on your system. For ease of installation, the HBAnyware and lputil utilities are bundled together.

#### Prerequisites

- Ipfc driver 6.11c must be installed prior to installing the utilties.
- Java Runtime Environment:

Version 5 of the Java Runtime Environment (JRE) must be installed. The lputil and HBAnyware utilities will not run under earlier versions of the JRE.

The JRE and instructions for installation can be found at http://java.sun.com/downloads/index.html.

🔀 EMULEX'



#### Procedure

To install the HBAnyware and lputil utilities from the tar file:

- 1. Uncompress and untar the EmlxApps file.
- 2. Run the unpack script. Type:

```
./unpack_apps
```

to obtain correct package version.

- 3. Unzip the file. Type:
  - gunzip HBAnyware-<version>-sparc.tar.gz
- 4. Untar the file. Type:
  - tar -xvf HBAnyware-<version>-sparc.tar
- 5. Run the pkgadd utility. Type:

```
pkgadd -d .
```

- 6. When prompted by pkadd, choose to install HBAnyware.
- 7. When prompted by pkadd, answer the HBAnyware installation option questions.

```
Note: The utilities require the java runtime binaries and libraries, so their path must be included in the PATH environment variable. For example, if the java runtime binaries are in /usr/java/bin, then include this path in the PATH environment variable.
```

For example: (bash> export PATH="\$PATH:/usr/java/bin")

## Installing the HBAnyware Utility with Web Launch

#### Prerequisites

Before installing the HBAnyware utility with Web Launch, ensure your systems meet the following requirements. See page 13 for more information about the HBAnyware utility with Web Launch.

- The system on which you are installing the Web Launch services package (the server) requires the following:
  - The HTTP server must be configured to handle the JNLP MIME file type. The following MIME file type/file extension must be added to your server configuration:

```
MIME type: application/x-java-jnlp-file
```

File Extension: jnlp

- The HTTP server must be configured and running.
- The system on which you are running the browser (the client) requires the following:
  - The Java Runtime Environment (JRE) 5.0 or later must be installed. Below are the specific requirements:
    - Sun 32-bit JRE 5.0 or later for Intel based systems (x86 and IA64)
    - Sun 32-bit JRE 5.0 or later x86-64

Refer to the appropriate vendor documentation for detailed instructions about configuring MIME types, configuring and starting the HTTP server and installing the JRE.

• The HBAnyware utility must be installed before installing HBAnyware with Web Launch.



## Procedure

To install HBAnyware with Web Launch:

- 1. Log on as 'root'.
- 2. Navigate to the HBAnyware directory. Type:

cd /usr/sbin/hbanyware

3. Run the install script. Type:

./wsinstall

4. When prompted, enter the Web server's document root directory. For example:

/srv/www/htdocs

- 5. You are provided with the IP address of the host and asked if that is the IP address that is being used by your Web server. Answer Y or N as appropriate. If you answer N, you are prompted for the IP address you wish to use.
- 6. You are asked if your web server listening on the normal default HTTP port (80)? Answer Y or N as appropriate. If you answer N, you are prompted for the port you wish to use.

You are notified the installation of the HBAnyware Web Launch package has completed.

## Installing the HBAnyware Utility Security Configurator

Follow these instructions to install the HBAnyware utility Security Configurator on your system.

#### Prerequisites

- The lpfc driver 6.11c must be installed prior to installing the utilties.
- The HBAnyware utility must be installed on the system.
- Java Runtime Environment:

Version 5 of the Java Runtime Environment (JRE) must be installed. The lputil and HBAnyware utilities will not run under earlier versions of the JRE.

The JRE and instructions for installation can be found at: http://java.sun.com/downloads/index.html.

#### Procedure

To install the HBAnyware utility Security Configurator from a tar file:

- 1. Copy the <HBAnywareSSC\_version>.tar.gz file to a directory on the install machine.
- 2. cd to the directory to which you copied the gz file.
- 3. Untar the file. Type:

```
gzcat <HBAnywareSSC version>.tar.gz | tar xvf-
```

- 4. su to 'root'.
- 5. At the shell prompt, type:

pkgadd -d `pwd`



## **Removing an Existing Driver**

The Emulex driver for Solaris can be removed by using pkgrm. All the lpfc files will be removed, including the file containing the driver itself. The next time the system is rebooted, the driver will not be loaded. All system resources, such as disk space and memory, will be reclaimed.

Two files are saved when a pkgrm is performed:

- The /kernel/drv/lpfc.conf file is moved to /usr/tmp/lpfc.conf.pkgrm. This file is used as a reference to restore any customized parameter settings after updating a new device driver.
- The /kernel/drv/sd.conf file is moved to /usr/tmp/sd.conf.pkgrm. This file is used as a reference to restore any customized parameter settings after updating a new device driver.

To remove the driver:

- 1. Login as 'root', or su to 'root'.
- 2. Remove the HBAnyware utility. Type:

pkgrm HBAnyware

3. At the shell prompt, type:

pkgrm lpfc

4. Perform a reconfiguration reboot into single user mode by typing:

reboot -- -rs

5. Type the following command to clean up the old structures: (Solaris 7 or higher)

disks -C

6. Install the new lpfc device driver using the "Install a Driver for the First Time" instructions on page 10.

When you install the driver with pkgadd, two files are saved if they exist, just in case they are needed. The file /kernel/drv/lpfc.conf is saved in /usr/tmp/lpfc.conf.pkgadd. The file /kernel/drv/sd.conf is saved in /usr/tmp/lpfc.conf.pkgadd.

For further information on installing and removing drivers, consult the Solaris system administration documentation and the pkgadd(1M) and pkgrm(1M) manual pages.

## **Uninstalling the Utilities**

Follow these instructions to uninstall the utilities.

**Note:** If the HBAnyware Security Configurator is installed, it must be uninstalled before uninstalling the HBAnyware and lputil utilities.

## Uninstalling the HBAnyware Security Configurator

- 1. Log on as 'root'.
- 2. Type:

pkgrm HBAnywareSSC

## Uninstalling the HBAnyware and Iputil Utilities

To uninstall the HBAnyware and lputil utilities:

- 1. Log on as 'root'.
- 2. Type:

pkgrm HBAnyware

#### Uninstalling HBAnyware with Web Launch

**Note:** If you installed HBAnyware with Web Launch, you must uninstall it before uninstalling HBAnyware.

To uninstall HBAnyware with Web Launch:

- 1. Log on as 'root'.
- 2. Execute the following script:

/usr/sbin/hbanyware/wsuninstall

This script stops the HBAnyware Web Launch Service daemons (if they are running) and removes all Web Launch related files from the host.

## **Loading Manpages**

Manual pages are installed in section 7d of the online man pages. Normally the 'catman' command can be run to create preformatted versions of the on-line manual from the nroff(1) input files. Each manual page is examined, and those whose preformatted versions are missing or out of date are re-created. If any changes are made, catman re-creates the windex database. Depending on your system, this operation can take anywhere from 1 to 10 minutes. If you press **n**, the catman will be skipped, which allows the installation to complete quickly. If the catman command is skipped, it can be run later.

## **SUN SAN Foundation Software Considerations**

Emulex now has a separate Fibre Channel Adapter (FCA) driver (emlxs) that supports the SUN SAN Foundation Software. SUN distributes and supports the Emulex emlxs driver. Since Emulex LightPulse HBAs are supported by both the lpfc and emlxs drivers, the driver installation scripts do not modify existing installations of the other driver type. For example, if emlxs is already installed on your system and you attempt to install the lpfc driver, then the lpfc driver will not claim any of the HBAs that the emlxs driver has already claimed, although the driver will be installed properly on the system

To change the driver HBA bindings, run the emlxdrv utility. The utility enables you to choose which driver (lpfc or emlxs) controls the Emulex adapters in the system. The utility is available on the Emulex Web site as part of the FCA utilities package (http://www.emulex.com/ts/downloads/solsfs/solsfs.html#).



## Configuration

## Introduction

The Emulex driver for Solaris has many options that you can modify to provide for different behavior. You can change these options using the HBAnyware® utility (HBAnyware) or the LightPulse® diagnostic utility (Iputil). The HBAnyware utility is client/server based and provides 'remote' configuration capability to other host platforms running the HBAnyware utility. This remote configuration capability can be provided either "inband" (host systems on the same FC SAN) or "out-of-band" (from IP addresses of remote machines).

The new HBAnyware Web Launch feature enables you to download and launch the HBAnyware user interface by specifying the URL of a server that is hosting the HBAnyware Web Launch software. The client machine from which the request is being made does not need the HBAnyware package or even an installed Emulex HBA. You only need a standard web browser, or some other application capable of making HTTP requests. You do not even need the Java runtime as that too will be automatically downloaded if it is not already present.

**Note:** Only the HBAnyware Web Launch GUI is being exported to the requesting client. All HBA discovery and remote management operations are performed by resources running on the remote host that served up the GUI component. Therefore, the SAN "view" displayed by the GUI is not from the perspective of the client running the GUI, but rather from the perspective of the host from which this GUI was retrieved.

- The HBAnyware utility is a user-friendly graphical environment. Use the HBAnyware utility to do any of the following:
  - Discover local and remote hosts, host bus adapters (HBAs), targets and LUNs
  - Reset HBAs
  - Set HBA driver parameters
  - Set driver parameters simultaneously to multiple HBAs using Batch Update
  - · Set global driver parameters to HBAs
  - Update firmware on a single HBA or multiple HBAs using Batch Update
  - Update FC boot code (BootBIOS, OpenBoot or EFIBoot) on the local HBA or on remote HBAs
  - Enable or disable the system BIOS
  - Run diagnostic tests on HBAs
  - Manage out-of-band HBAs
  - Manage local and in-band remote HBAs
  - Locate HBAs using beaconing
  - Launch HBAnyware directly from your Web browser
- The lputil utility is a console application. The lputil utility can be used as an alternative to the HBAnyware utility for the following:
  - Download PCI configuration data files
  - Discover HBAs
  - Reset HBAs
  - Update firmware on the local HBA



- Update FC boot code on the local HBA
- Enable the system BIOS

## Starting the HBAnyware Utility for Solaris

**Note:** The HBAnyware utility can only discover and manage remote HBAs on hosts running the HBAnyware utility's elxhbamgr daemon.

#### Starting the HBAnyware Utility

**Note:** Remote in-band capabilities of the HBAnyware utility are subject to fabric zoning configuration. Remote hosts you want to discover and manage using the HBAnyware utility must be in the same zone or discovered and managed out-of-band through an Ethernet connection.

To start the HBAnyware utility for Solaris:

- 1. Login as or su to 'root'.
- 2. Run the script:

/usr/sbin/hbanyware/hbanyware

#### Starting HBAnyware with Web Launch

After the HBAnyware Web Launch software has been installed and the Web Launch server has been initialized, you can launch the HBAnyware utility directly with your Web browser.

To launch the HBAnyware utility with your Web browser:

- 1. Open your Web browser.
- 2. Enter the URL of an HBAnyware.jnlp file. Make sure that the URL specifies a remote server which has the HBAnyware Web Launch software installed and running. For example:

http://138.239.20.30/hbanyware.jnlp

**Note:** If the browser window displays "Emulex Corporation HBAnyware Demo of HBAnyware WebStart web n.n.n.n ..." when attempting to start HBAnyware with Web Launch, refer to the "Troubleshooting" section on page 150.

#### Starting the HBAnyware Security Configurator

#### **Prerequisites**

- Make sure that all of the systems that are part of, or will be part of, the security configuration are online on the network so that they receive updates or changes made to the security configuration.
- Before running the security configurator out-of-band, you must set up the OOB hosts so they will be seen by the security configurator. See the Out-of-Band SAN Management topics for information.

**Note:** Remote in-band capabilities of the HBAnyware utility are subject to fabric zoning configuration. Remote hosts you want to discover and manage using the HBAnyware utility must be in the same zone or discovered and managed out-of-band through an Ethernet connection.



#### Procedure

To start the HBAnyware Security Configurator for Solaris:

- 1. Login as or su to 'root'.
- 2. Run the script:

/usr/sbin/hbanyware/ssc

#### Starting the HBAnyware Utility from the Command Line

To launch the HBAnyware utility from the command line:

 Type /usr/sbin/hbanyware/hbanyware. This starts the HBAnyware utility running in in-band access. You can also start the HBAnyware utility running in out-of-band access by adding an argument in the form "h=<host>". The <host> argument may be either the IP address of the host or its system name. The call will use a default IP port of 23333, but you can override this by optionally appending a colon (:) and the IP port number.

**Note:** Remember that not all HBAs for a specific host may be running in-band. Therefore, running that host out-of-band may display HBAs that do not appear when the host is running in-band.

#### **Examples of Modifications**

• HBAnyware h=138.239.82.2

The HBAnyware utility will show HBAs in the host with the IP address 138.239.82.2.

• HBAnyware h=Util01

The HBAnyware utility will show HBAs in the host named Util01.

• HBAnyware h=138.239.82.2:4295

The HBAnyware utility will show HBAs in the host with the IP address 138.239.82.2 using IP Port 4295.

• HBAnyware h=Util01:4295

The HBAnyware utility will show HBAs in the host named Util01 using IP port 4295.

Run this modified command line to launch the HBAnyware utility for a single, remote host in local mode.



## **Changing Management Mode**

During installation you selected a management mode, however you can change it if the "Allow users to change management mode from the utility" box was checked.

HBAnyware enables you to choose three types of host/HBA management:

- Strictly Local Management This setting only allows management of HBAs on this host. Management of HBAs on this host from other hosts is not allowed.
- Local Management Plus This setting only allows management of HBAs on this host, but management of HBAs on this host from another host is possible.
- Full Management This setting enables you to manage HBAs on this host and other hosts that allow it.

C	Strictly Local Management
	The utility only manages the adapters on this host. Management of adapters on this host from other hosts is not allowed.
c	Local Management Plus (remote access from other hosts)
	The utility only manages the adapters on this host. Management of adapters on this host from other hosts is allowed.
œ	Full Management
	The utility manages the adapters on this host and other hosts that allow it. Management of the adapters on this host from another host is allowed.

Figure 1: HBAnyware Utility, Management Mode Window

To change HBAnyware management mode:

- 1. Start the HBAnyware utility.
- 2. From the File menu, select Management Mode. The Management Mode dialog box appears.
- 3. Choose the management type you want.
- 4. Click OK.



## The HBAnyware Utility Window Element Definitions

The HBAnyware utility window contains five basic components: the menu bar, the toolbar, the discoverytree, the property tabs and the status bar.

MenuBar		Property Tabs	
Se Sew Adapter Sourcery	Batch Help P		<u>.   0  ×</u>
■         nots           ■         ■ <td>Conservation Adapter Data Stoc C4-ED Stoc C4-ED Sto</td> <td>italis   Statistics   Firmware   Target Mipping   Driver Parameter Envice LightPulie LP101 2 Gigabit POI Fire Overvel Adopter 1000100001C3 97-37-CD 200010001C3 97-37-CD n/le 55.3040 1.9344 biredt Disabled Up Operational 2 688/itec.</td> <td>s Dagnestics</td>	Conservation Adapter Data Stoc C4-ED Stoc C4-ED Sto	italis   Statistics   Firmware   Target Mipping   Driver Parameter Envice LightPulie LP101 2 Gigabit POI Fire Overvel Adopter 1000100001C3 97-37-CD 200010001C3 97-37-CD n/le 55.3040 1.9344 biredt Disabled Up Operational 2 688/itec.	s Dagnestics
	Place the cursor over an	item in the winder above to receive a help description about that item.	
Discovery Tree		Status Bar	

Figure 2: HBAnyware Utility Window with Element Call Outs

**Note:** The element you select in the discovery-tree determines whether a menu item or toolbar icon is active. For example, if you select the local host or other system host, the Reset Adapter item on the Adapter menu is unavailable. The Reset Adapter toolbar button is unavailable as well.

#### The Menu Bar

The menu bar contains command menus that enable you to perform a variety of tasks such as exiting the HBAnyware utility, resetting host bus adapters and sorting items in the discovery-tree view. Many of the menu bar commands are also available from the toolbar.



#### The Toolbar

The toolbar contains buttons that enable you to refresh the discovery-tree, reset the selected HBA and sort the discovery-tree. Many of the toolbar functions are also available from the menu bar.



Figure 3: The HBAnyware Toolbar

The toolbar is visible by default. Use the Toolbar item in the View menu to hide the toolbar. If the item is checked, the toolbar is visible.

#### The Toolbar Buttons

The toolbar buttons perform the following tasks:



Click the **Rediscover** button to refresh the discovery-tree display.

Reset button to reset the selected HBA.

#### **Sort Toolbar Buttons**

You can sort discovered adapters by host name or fabric addresses. You can also choose to display only local or remote HBAs. See page 64 for details on sort buttons.



Sort by Host Name button (default)



Sort by Fabric ID button



Local HBAs Only button



Help button



#### The Discovery-Tree

The discovery-tree (left pane) has icons that represent discovered network (SAN) elements (local host name, system host names and all HBAs active on each host). Targets and LUNs, when present, are also displayed.



Figure 4: HBAnyware Utility, Discovery-tree

#### **Discovery-Tree Icons**

Discover- tree icons represent the following:



This icon represents the local host.

This icon represents other hosts connected to the system.



Θ

颮

A green HBA icon with black descriptive text represents an online HBA.

A red HBA icon with red descriptive text represents an offline or otherwise temporarily inaccessible HBA. Several situations could cause the HBA to be offline or inaccessible:

- The HBA on a local host is not connected to the network, but is still available for local access.
- The HBA on a local host is malfunctioning and is inaccessible to the local host as well as to the network.
- The HBA on a local host is busy performing a local download and is temporarily inaccessible to the local host as well as to the network.

The Target icon represents connections to individual storage devices.

The LUN icon represents connections to individual LUNs.


# **Property Tabs**

The property tabs display configuration, statistical and status information for network elements. The set of available tabs is context-sensitive, depending on the type of network element or HBA currently selected in the discovery-tree.

#### **Status Bar**

As you navigate through the menu bar or the toolbar, help messages appear on the status bar near the bottom of the HBAnyware window.

The status bar is visible by default. Use the Status Bar item in the View menu to hide the status bar. If checked, the status bar is visible.

## Using the HBAnyware Utility Command-Line Interface

The Command Line Interface (CLI) Client component of the HBAnyware utility provides access to the capabilities of the Remote Management library from a console command prompt. This component is intended for use in scripted operations from within shell scripts, batch files, or the specific platform equivalent.

**Note:** The HBAnyware utility can only discover and manage remote HBAs on hosts running the HBAnyware utility's elxhbamgr daemon.

Remote in-band capabilities of the HBAnyware utility are subject to fabric zoning configuration. Remote hosts you want to discover and manage using the HBAnyware utility must be in the same zone or discovered and managed out-of-band through an Ethernet connection.

## **Using the CLI Client**

The CLI Client is a console application named hbacmd. Each time you run this application from the command line, a single operation is performed.

The first parameter of this command is the requested operation. When the specified operation is completed, the command prompt is displayed. Most operations retrieve information about an entity on the SAN and display that information on the console.

Most of the CLI Client commands require one or more additional parameters that specify the nature of the command. A parameter used by many hbacmd commands specifies the World Wide Port Name (WWPN) of the HBA that is the target of the command. For example, the following command shows the port attributes for the HBA with the specified WWPN:

/usr/sbin/hbanyware/hbacmd portattrib 10:00:00:00:c9:20:20:20

hbacmd can be run in out-of-band mode by making the first argument h=<host>. For example:

/usr/sbin/hbanyware/hbacmd h=cp-hp5670 listhbas
/usr/sbin/hbanyware/hbacmd h=138.239.91.121 listhbas

#### Syntax Rules

The syntax rules for the HBAnyware utility Command-Line Interface (hbacmd) are as follows:

- All commands and their arguments are NOT case sensitive.
- The requested operation must contain at least three characters, or as many as needed to distinguish it from any other operation.



- Whenever a WWPN is specified, individual fields are separated by colons (:) or spaces (). When using space separators, the entire WWPN must be enclosed in quotes (").
- All hbacmd inputs must be in hexadecimal format. The only exceptions are the cycle-counts used in some of the diagnostic commands.

#### **Out-of-Band Access**

Out-of-band (OOB) access enables you to access HBAs via their IP-address or by the name of the host on which they reside. Since HBAs may exist on a host but not be a part of a FC network, they will not appear during normal in-band discovery. Thus, OOB access enlarges the number of HBAs that can be gueried or modified.

Note: A local host cannot be accessed out-of-band.

OOB access via hbacmd uses an additional parameter on the command line. The parameter must be the first parameter in the list, coming immediately after hbacmd. The remaining parameters are those documented for each operation.

Note: You can also access an in-band HBA via its OOB address.

The format of the OOB parameter is:

h={<IPAddress> | <host-name>}

Some examples are:

h=128.239.91.88 h=cp-compag8000

The following lists all HBAs running on the host with a specified IP address:

hbacmd h=128.239.91.88 listHBAs

If you don't know the IP address, but you know the host name, type:

hbacmd h=cp-compag8000 listHBAs

If the host is unreachable, the command will return an error.

#### **CLI Client Command Reference**

#### Version

Syntax: HBACMD Version

Description: Shows the current version of the HBAnyware CLI client application. To view the current version, type:

hbacmd version

Sample response:

HBAnyware Command Line Interface: Version 3.0 Parameters: None.

# ListHBAs

Syntax: HBACMD ListHBAs



Description: Shows a list of the discovered manageable Emulex HBAs and some of their attributes. The list will contain one 6-attribute group for each discovered HBA. Example of an attribute group list:

```
Manageable HBA List

Port WWN: 10:00:00:c9:20:08:cc

Node WWN: 20:00:00:c9:20:08:cc

Fabric Name:10:00:00:60:69:90:0b:f6

Flags: 0000f900

Host Name: CP-EMULEX-DECPC

Mfg: Emulex Corporation
```

Parameters: None.

#### SaveConfig

Syntax: HBACMD SaveConfig <wwpn> <filename> <ctrlword>

Description: Saves the contents of the driver parameter list to a file for the specified HBA. The ASCII file lists parameter definitions, delimited by a comma. Each definition is of the form:

<parameter-name>=<parameter-value></parameter-value>

Save either the values of the global set or those specific to the referenced HBA. The file created by this command stores itself in the Emulex Repository directory.

Example:

```
hbacmd SaveConfig elxstor-5-1.20A0.dpv 10:00:00:00:c9:2e:51:2e N
```

Sample response:

```
HBACMD_SaveConfig: Success writing driver parameters to file
C:\Program Files\HBAnyware\Emulex Repository\elxstor-5-1.20A.dpv
```

Parameters:

WWPN - The World Wide Port Name of the HBA. This HBA can be either local or remote.

filename - The file name that will contain the driver parameter list upon successful completion of this command.

ctrlword - G = save the global parameter set. N = save the local (HBA-specific) parameter set.

#### HBAAttrib

Syntax: HBACMD HBAAttrib <wwpn>

Description: Shows a list of all HBA attributes for the HBA with the specified WWPN. To view the attributes for the HBA, type:

hbacmd hbaattrib 10:00:00:00:c9:20:08:cc

Sample response:

HBA Attributes for 10:00:00:c9:4a:c5:90 Host Name : localhost.localdomain

Manufacturer :	Emulex Corporation
Serial Number :	BG53059073
Model :	LP1150-F4
Model Desc :	Emulex LP1150-F4 4Gb 1port FC: PCI-X2 SFF HBA
Node WWN :	20 00 00 00 c9 4a c5 90
Node Symname :	Emulex LP1150-F4 FV2.10A5 DV8.0.16.25
HW Version :	1036406d
Opt ROM Version:	
FW Version :	2.10A5 (J2F2.10A5)
Vender Spec ID :	10DF
Number of Ports:	1
Driver Name :	lpfc
Device ID :	F0D5
HBA Type :	LP1150-F4
Operational FW :	SLI-2 Overlay
SLI1 FW :	SLI-1 Overlay 2.10a5
SLI2 FW :	SLI-2 Overlay 2.10a5
IEEE Address :	00 00 c9 4a c5 90
Boot BIOS :	Disabled
Driver Version :	8.0.16.25; HBAAPI(I) v2.1.c, 02-02-06
Kernel Version :	1.11a5

Parameters:

WWPN - The World Wide Port Name of the HBA. This HBA can be either local or remote.

#### PortAttrib

Syntax: HBACMD PortAttrib <wwpn>

Description: Shows a list of all port attributes for the port with the specified WWPN. To view the port attributes for the HBA, type:

hbacmd portattrib 10:00:00:c9:20:08:cc

Sample response:

Port	Attributes for	1(	):00	0:00	):00	):C9	9:4a	a:c5	5:90	)
Node	WWN	:	20	00	00	00	c9	4a	c5	90
Port	WWN	:	10	00	00	00	с9	4a	c5	90
Port	Symname	:								
Port	FCID	:	114	100						
Port	Туре	:	Fab	orio	2					
Port	State	:	Ope	erat	cior	nal				
Port	Service Type	:	12							
Port	Supported FC4	:	00	00	01	20	00	00	00	01
			00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00
			00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00
			00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00
Port	Active FC4	:	00	00	01	00	00	00	00	01
			00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00
			00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00
			00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00
Port	Supported Speed	l:	Unł	knov	vn					
Port	Speed	:	2 (	GBit	:/se	ec.				



```
Max Frame Size : 2048
OS Device Name : /sys/class/scsi_host/host10
Num Discovered Ports: 3
Fabric Name : 10 00 00 60 69 50 15 25
```

WWPN - The World Wide Port Name of the port. This port can be either local or remote.

#### PortStat

Syntax: HBACMD PortStat <wwpn>

Description: Shows all port statistics for the HBA with the specified WWPN. To view port statistics for the HBA, type:

hbacmd portstat 10:00:00:00:c9:20:08:cc

Sample response:

Port Statistics for 10:00:00:00:c9:20:08:cc : 1496534 Exchange Count Responder Exchange Count:37505TX Seq Count:1588007RX Seq Count:1561255TX Frame Count:1568695RX Frame Count:1561892TX Word Count:19821312RX Word Count:66368000TX KB Count:77427RX KB Count:259250LIP Count:1NOS Count:n/aError Frame Count:0Dumped Frame Count:n/aLink Failure Count:0Loss of Sync Count:9 Responder Exchange Count: 37505 Loss of Sync Count : 9 Loss of Signal Count : 0 Prim Seq Prot Err Count : 0 Invalid TX Word Count : 0 nvalid RX Frame CRC Cnt : 0 Link Transition Count : 0 Active RPI Count : Ο Active XRI Count : 0 Rx Port Busy Count:0Rx Fabric Busy Count:0 Primary Sequence Timeout: 0 Elastic Buffer Overrun : 0 Arbitration Timout : 0

Parameters:

WWPN - The World Wide Port Name of the port. This port can be either local or remote.

#### ServerAttrib

Syntax: HBACMD ServerAttrib < WWPN>



Description: Shows a list of attributes of the server running locally to the specified HBA. To view the server attributes for the HBA, type:

```
hbacmd serverattrib 10:00:00:00:c9:20:08:cc
```

Sample response:

```
Server Attributes for 10:00:00:00:c9:4a:c5:90
Host Name : localhost.localdomain
FW Resource Path: /usr/sbin/hbanyware/RMRepository/
DR Resource Path: /usr/sbin/hbanyware/RMRepository/
HBAnyware Server Version: 3.0
```

Parameters:

WWPN - The World Wide Port Name of any HBA local to the designated server. The HBA itself can be either local or remote.

#### **TargetMapping**

Syntax: HBACMD TargetMapping <wwpm>

Description: Shows a list of mapped targets and the LUNs attached to each for the port with the specified WWPN. To view the target mapping for 10:00:00:c9:20:08:0c, type:

hbacmd targetmapping 10:00:00:00:c9:20:08:0c

Sample response:

```
Target Mapping for 10:00:00:00:c9:4a:c5:90
FCP ID
                  : 115E2
SCSI Bus Number: 0
SCSI Target Num: 0
Node WWN : 50:00:60:E8:02:78:6E:03
Port WWN : 50:00:60:E8:02:78:6E:03
Tgt Device Name: /dev/sdb

      FCP LUN 00
      : 0000 0000 0000 0000
      0000

      SCSI OS Lun
      : 0

Lun Device Name: /dev/sdb
Vendor ID : HITACHI
Product ID : OPEN-3
Product Version: 0118
SCSI Capacity : 2347 MB
Block Size
                 : 512 Bytes
FCP LUN 01 : 0001 0000 0000 0000
SCSI OS Lun : 1
Lun Device Name: /dev/sdb
Vendor ID : HITACHI
Product ID : OPEN-3
Product Version: 0118
SCSI Capacity : 2347 MB
Block Size : 512 Bytes

        FCP LUN 02
        : 0002 0000 0000 0000

        SCSI OS Lun
        : 2

Lun Device Name: /dev/sdb
Vendor ID : HITACHI
Product ID
                  : OPEN-3
```



Product Version: 0118 SCSI Capacity : 2347 MB Block Size : 512 Bytes

Parameters:

WWPN - The World Wide Port Name of the port. This port can be either local or remote.

#### Reset

Syntax: HBACMD Reset <wwpn>

Description: Resets the HBA with the specified WWPN. Resetting an HBA may require several seconds to complete, especially for remote devices. This command will return for additional input only after the reset has finished. To reset an HBA whose WWPN is 10:00:00:c9:e:51:2e, type:

hbacmd reset 10:00:00:00:c9:2e:51:2e

Sample response:

Reset HBA 10:00:00:c9:2e:51:2e

Parameters:

WWPN - The World Wide Port Name of the port. This port can be either local or remote.

#### Download

Syntax: HBACMD Download <wwpn> <filename>

Description: Loads the specified firmware image to the HBA with the specified WWPN. To load the firmware image located in hdc190a4.dwc to an HBA with WWPN 10:00:00:00:c9:2e:51:2e, type:

hbacmd download 10:00:00:00:c9:2e:51:2e hdc190a4.dwc

Sample response for a successful download:

```
Downloading hdc190a4.dwc to hba 10:00:00:00:c9:2e:51:2e Download Complete.
```

Parameters:

WWPN - The World Wide Port Name of the HBA that is the target of the firmware download. This HBA can be either local or remote.

FileName - The file name of the firmware image you want to load. This can be any file accessible to the CLI client application.

#### AllNodeInfo

Syntax: HBACMD AllNodeInfo <wwpn>

Description: Shows target node information for each target accessible from the specified HBA. To view the target node data for 10:00:00:c9:20:0d:36, type:

Hbacmd allnodeinfo 10:00:00:00:c9:20:0d:36



Sample response:

```
All Node Info for 10:00:00:00:c9:4a:c5:90

Node Type : EXIST

FCP ID : 115E2

SCSI Bus Number: 0

SCSI Target Num: 0

Node WWN : 50:00:60:E8:02:78:6E:03

Port WWN : 50:00:60:E8:02:78:6E:03

OS Device Name : /sys/class/scsi host/host10/device/target10:0:0
```

Parameters:

WWPN - The World Wide Port Name of the HBA whose target node information you want to query. This HBA can be either local or remote.

#### DriverConfig

Syntax: HBACMD driverconfig <wwpn> elxconfig.dpv <ctrlword>

Description: Sets all driver parameters for the HBA specified by WWPN to the driver parameter values contained in the driver parameter file (elxconfig.dpv in the above example). These files can be easily generated via the HBAnyware Driver Parameter tab. Driver types must match between .dpv file type and host platform HBA.

For example, type:

```
hbacmd driverconfig 10:00:00:00:c9:2e:51:2e elxconfig G
```

Below is a sample response:

hbacmd: Success setting driver configuration parameters to values in .dpv file.

Parameters:

WWPN - The World Wide Port Name of the HBA on which to set driver parameters.

ctrlword - G = save the global parameter set.

#### **DriverParams**

Syntax: HBACMD DriverParams < wwpn>

Description: Shows the name and values of each driver parameter for the selected HBA. To view the driver parameters for HBA 10:00:00:c9:2e:51:2e, type:

```
hbacmd driverparams 10:00:00:00:c9:2e:51:2e
```

Sample (abbreviated) response:

Driver Params for 10:00:00:c9:4a:c5:90. Values in HEX format.

DX	string	Low	High	Def	Cur	Exp	Dyn
00	log-verbose	0	ffff	0	20	1	1
01	lun-queue-depth	1	80	1e	1e	1	4
02	scan-down	0	1	1	1	1	4
03	nodev-tmo	0	ff	1e	3c	1	1
04	topology	0	6	0	0	1	4
05	link-speed	0	4	0	0	1	4
06	fcp-class	2	3	3	3	1	4
07	use-adisc	0	1	0	1	1	1



08	ack0	0	1	0	0	1	4
09	fcp-bind-method	1	4	2	2	1	4
0a	cr-delay	0	3f	0	0	1	4
0b	cr-count	1	ff	1	1	1	4
0c	fdmi-on	0	2	0	0	1	4
0d	discovery-threads	1	40	20	20	1	4
0e	max-luns	1	8000	100	100	1	4

WWPN - The World Wide Port Name of the HBA whose driver parameters you want to view. This HBA can be either local or remote.

#### DriverParamsGlobal

Syntax: HBACMD DriverParamsGlobal <wwpn>

Description: Shows the name and the global value of each driver parameter for the selected HBA. To view the global driver parameters for HBA 10:00:00:c9:2e:51:2e, type:

hbacmd driverparamsglobal 10:00:00:00:c9:2e:51:2e

Sample (abbreviated) response:

Driver Params (Global) for 10:00:00:00:c9:2e:51:2e. Values in HEX.

DX	string	Low	High	Def	Cur	Exp	Dyn
00	AbortStatus	0	ff	е	е	1	1
01	ARBTOV	1f4	4e20	5dc	5dc	1	5
02	BlinkTimeOut	1	1E	8	8	1	0
03	Class	1	2	2	2	1	1
04	CrfIntrpt	0	1	0	0	1	5
05	CrfMsCnt	0	3f	0	0	1	5
06	CrfRspCnt	0	ff	0	0	1	5
07	DebugMask	0	effffff	0	0	0	5
08	DisableAck0	0	1	0	0	1	5
09	DiscMethod	0	1	1	0	1	1
0a	DiscoveryDelay	0	7	0	0	1	1
0b	ElsRetryCount	1	ff	1	1	1	1
0c	ElsRjtCount	0	ff	2d	2d	1	1
0d	ElsTimeOut	0	1	0	0	1	1
0e	EmulexOption	0	7ffffff	d200	da00	1	0
Of	EnableDPC	0	1	0	1	1	1
10	ErrRetryMax	0	ffffffe	1	1	1	1
11	FrameSizeMSB	0	8	0	0	1	5
12	HardAddress	0	1	0	0	1	0
13	HlinkTimeOut	0	ff	1e	1e	1	1
14	InitialDelay	0	1	1	1	1	0
15	LinkSpeed	0	10	0	0	1	1
16	LinkTimeOut		1f4	3c	3c	1	1
17	LipFFrecovery	0	1	0	0	1	1
18	LogErrors	0	1	0	0	1	1



19	MapNodeName	0	1	0	0	1	0
1a	NodeTimeOut	0	ff	14	14	1	1
1b	QueueAction	0	2	0	0	1	1
1c	QueueDepth	1	ff	20	20	1	1
1d	QueueTarget	0	1	0	0	1	5
1e	QueueIncStep	0	100	2	2	1	1
1f	RegFcpType	0	1	1	1	1	1
20	ResetFF	0	1	0	0	1	1
21	ResetTPRLO	0	2	0	0	1	1
22	RetryNodePurge	0	1	1	1	1	1
23	RTTOV	а	ff	64	64	1	5

WWPN - The World Wide Port Name of the HBA whose driver parameters you want to view. This HBA can be either local or remote.

#### SetDriverParam

**Note:** This command may only be used with the lpfc\_log\_verbose, lpfc\_use\_adisc and lpfc\_nodev\_tmo parameters.

Syntax: HBACMD SetDriverParam <wwpn> <ctrlword> <param> <value>

Description: Changes the value of the specified driver parameter that is operating the referenced HBA, and designates the scope of that change. For example, to change the value of the log\_verbose parameter for 10:00:00:00:c9:2e:51:2e and make it global, type:

```
hbacmd SetDriverParam 10:00:00:00:c9:2e:51:2e g log verbose 3
```

Sample response:

```
Set Driver Parameter log_verbose=3(g) for 10:00:00:c9:2e:51:2e
```

Parameters:

WWPN - The World Wide Port Name of the HBA whose Boot BIOS you want to modify. This HBA can be either local or remote.

ctrlword - G = make change global , B = make change both permanent and global, N = make change neither permanent nor global

param - The name of the parameter whose value you want to modify. You can only use the log\_verbose, use\_adisc and \_nodev\_tmo parameters. Do not preceed these commands with lpfc\_. For example use log\_verbose not lpfc\_log\_verbose.

Value - The new value you want to assign to the parameter.

#### **SetBootBios**

Syntax: HBACMD SetBootBios <wwpn> <ctrlword>

Description: Enables or disables the Boot BIOS on the referenced HBA. To enable the Boot BIOS for 10:00:00:c9:2e:51:2e, type:

hbacmd setbootbios 10:00:00:00:c9:2e:51:2e E



WWPN - The World Wide Port Name of the HBA whose Boot BIOS you want to modify. This HBA can be either local or remote.

ctrlword - E = enable the Boot BIOS, D = disable the Boot BIOS.

#### PciData

Syntax: HBACMD PciData < wwpn>

Description: Shows PCI configuration data for the HBA specified by the WWPN. To show PCI configuration data for HBA 10:00:00:c9:2e:51:2e, type:

hbacmd pcidata 10:00:00:00:c9:2e:51:2e

Sample response:

Vendor ID:	0x10DF	Device ID:	0  m xF0D5
Command:	0x0157	Status:	0x0230
Revision ID:	0x01	Prog If:	0x00
Subclass:	0x04	Base Class:	0x0C
Cache Line Size:	0x20	Latency Timer:	0xF8
Header Type:	0x00	Built In Self Test:	0x00
Base Address 0:	0xE0001004	Base Address 1:	
0x0000000			
Base Address 2:	0xE000004	Base Address 3:	
0x0000000			
Base Address 4:	0x0000C001	Base Address 5:	
0x0000000			
CIS:	0x00000000	SubVendor ID:	0x10DF
SubSystem ID:	0xF0D5	ROM Base Address:	0x00000000
Interrupt Line:	OxFF	Interrupt Pin:	0x01
Minimum Grant:	OxFF	Maximum Latency:	0x00
Capabilities Ptr:	0x5C		

#### Parameters:

WWPN - The World Wide Port Name of the HBA whose PCI configuration data you want to show.

#### Wakeup

Syntax: HBACMD wakeup <wwpn>

Description: Shows wakeup parameter data for the HBA specified by the WWPN. To show wakeup parameter data for HBA 10:00:00:c0:c9:2e:51:2e, type:

hbacmd wakeup 10:00:00:00:c9:2e:51:2e

Sample response:

Wakeup Parameters:		
Initial Load:	0x02C03992	0x00103411
Flags:	0x00000000	
Boot BIOS	0x03433290	0x00101303
SLI-1:	0x06433992	0x00103411
SLI-2:	0x07433992	0x00103411
Has Expansion ROM	0	



WWPN - The World Wide Port Name of the HBA whose wakeup parameter data you want to show.

#### LoopMap

Syntax: HBACMD loopmap <wwpn>

Description: Shows the arbitrated loop map data for the HBA specified by the WWPN. To show the arbitrated loop map data for HBA 10:00:00:c9:2e:51:2e, type:

hbacmd loopmap 10:00:00:00:c9:2e:51:2e

Below is a sample response:

AL\_PA: 01 Local Adapter E8 SCSI Device E4 SCSI Device CA SCSI Device

Parameters:

WWPN - The World Wide Port Name of the HBA whose loopmap you want to show.

#### GetBeacon

Syntax: HBACMD getbeacon <wwpn>

Description: Shows the current beacon status for the HBA specified by the WWPN. To show the current beacon status for HBA 10:00:00:c9:2e:51:2e, type:

For example, type:

```
hbacmd getbeacon 10:00:00:00:c9:2e:51:2e
```

Possible responses are:

Beacon State = On Beacon State = Off Unable to get Beacon state, error 1 Beaconing not supported on host or adapter

Parameters:

WWPN - The World Wide Port Name of the HBA whose beacon status you want to show.

#### SetBeacon

Syntax: HBACMD setbeacon <wwpn> <state>

Description: Sets the current beacon status for the HBA specified by the WWPN. To set the current beacon status for HBA 10:00:00:c0:c9:2e:51:2e to off, type:

hbacmd setbeacon 10:00:00:00:c9:2e:51:2e 0

To set the current beacon status for HBA 10:00:00:c9:2e:51:2e to on, type:

hbacmd setbeacon 10:00:00:00:c9:2e:51:2e 1

Possible responses are:

```
Beacon State successfully set to On
Beacons State successfully set to Off
Unable to get Beacon state, error 1
Beaconing not supported on host or adapter
```



WWPN -The World Wide Port Name of the HBA whose beacon status you want to set. This HBA can be either local or remote.

State - The new state of the beacon: 0 = beacon OFF, 1= beacon ON

#### PostTest

Syntax: HBACMD posttest <wwpn>

Description: Runs the POST test on the HBA specified by the WWPN. Support for remote HBA is out-ofband (Ethernet) only. To run the POST test for HBA 10:00:00:c9:2e:51:2e, type:

hbacmd posttest 10:00:00:00:c9:2e:51:2e

Sample response:

Running POST, polling for results.... Power On Self Test Succeeded;time to execute = 8928 ms

Parameters:

WWPN - The World Wide Port Name of the HBA on which to run the POST test.

#### EchoTest

Syntax: HBACMD echotest <wwpn1> <wwpn2> <count> <StopOnError>

Description: Runs the echo test on the HBAs specified by the WWPN1 and WWPN2.

**Note:** Support for remote HBA is out-of-band (Ethernet) only. The EchoTest command will fail if the target WWPN does not support the ECHO ELS command.

To run the echo test for HBA 10:00:00:c9:2e:51:2e, type:

hbacmd echotest 10:00:00:00:c9:2e:51:2e 10:00:00:c9:2e:51:45 10 1

Sample response:

Echo test: polling for results..... Echo test succeeded; time to execute = 53 ms.

Parameters:

WWPN1 - The World Wide Port Name of the originating HBA.

WWPN2 - The World Wide Port Name of the destination (echoing) HBA.

Count - The number of times to run the test.

StopOnError - Should the test be halted on Error? 0 = no halt, 1 = halt

#### Loopback

Syntax: HBACMD loopback <wwpn> <type> <count> <StopOnError>

Description: Runs the loop test on the HBA specified by the WWPN.

**Note:** Only external Loopback tests must be run out-of-band.

To run the loop test for HBA 10:00:00:c9:2e:51:2e, type:

hbacmd loopback 10:00:00:00:c9:2e:51:2e 1 10 0



Sample response:

Running Loopback: polling for results..... Loopback Test Failed; xmit errors = 3; rcv errors = 2; time to execute = 1015 ms.

Parameters:

WWPN - The World Wide Port Name of the HBA on which to run the loopback test(s).

Type -Type of loopback test where: 0 = PCI LoopBack Test, 1 = Internal LoopBack Test, 2 = External LoopBack Test

Count - The number of times to run the test (Range = 1,...10000)

StopOnError - Should the test be halted on Error? 0 = no halt, 1 = halt

#### Dump

Syntax: HBACMD dump <wwpn>

Description: Runs the dump diagnostic retrieval command on the HBA specified by the WWPN. This command is supported for local HBAs only. The file by default is located in: /usr/sbin/hbanyware/Dump

To run the dump diagnostic retrieval command for HBA 10:00:00:c9:2e:51:2e, type:

```
hbacmd dump 10:00:00:00:c9:2e:51:2e
```

Parameters:

WWPN - The World Wide Port Name of the HBA on which to you want to run the dump.

#### DeleteDumpFiles

Syntax: HBACMD deletedumpfiles <wwpn>

Description: Deletes all dump files associated with the HBA specified by the WWPN. To delete all dump files for HBA 10:00:00:c0:c9:2e:51:2e, type:

hbacmd deletedumpfiles 10:00:00:00:c9:2e:51:2e

Sample response:

HBACMD: Dump file deletion complete.

Parameters:

WWPN - The World Wide Port Name of the HBA whose dump files you want to delete.

#### PersistentBinding

Syntax: HBACMD PersistentBinding <wwpn> <source>

Description: Queries the presence of any persistent binding that may exist for the specified WWPN. The <source> is used to query either the configured or live state of any binding that may be present. To view the configured persistent binding for an adapter whose WWPN is 10:00:00:c9:20:0d:36, enter:

hbacmd persistentbinding 10:00:00:00:c9:20:0d:36 C



Sample response:

```
Persistent Binding for 10:00:00:c9:20:0d:36
Bind Type : WWPN
FCP ID
              : 10101SCSI
Bus Number: OSCSI
Target Num: 0Node
WWN : 20:00:00:D0:B2:00:30:40
Port WWN : 20:00:D0:B2:00:30:40
OS Device Name : \\.\Scsi:4:0
Bind Type
             : WWPN
FCP ID
             : 10FEFSCSI
Bus Number: OSCSI
Target Num: 1Node
      : 50:06:04:8A:CC:C8:99:00
WWN
Port WWN
             : 50:06:04:8A:CC:C8:99:00
OS Device Name : \\.\Scsi:4:1
```

If the binding does not exist, only the first line is returned.

Parameters:

WWPN - The World Wide Port Name of the HBA whose dump files you want to delete.

source - C if the configured state is being queried. L if the live state is being queried.

#### SetPersistentBinding

Syntax: HBACMD SetPersistentBinding <wwpn> <scope> <bindtype> <ID> \ <scsibus> <scsitarget>

Description: Sets a persistent binding between a Fibre Channel target and a Scsi bus and target. The binding can be to a target WWPN, target WWNN, or target D\_ID. To bind permanently, on behalf of HBA 10:00:00:c9:2e:51:2e, target WWPN 20:00:00:d0:b2:00:30:40 to Scsi bus 1, target 3, enter:

```
hbacmd setpersistentbinding 10:00:00:00:c9:2e:51:2e P P \
20:00:00:d0:b2:00:30:40 1 3
```

To bind immediately, on behalf of HBA 10:00:00:c9:2e:51:2e, target D\_ID 10101 to Scsi bus 1, target 3, enter:

```
hbacmd setpersistentbinding 10:00:00:00:c9:2e:51:2e I D \backslash 10101 1 3
```

If there are no errors, a response to the last example would be:

Set Persistent Binding for 10:00:00:c9:2e:51:2e I D \ 10101 1 3

Parameters:

WWPN - The World Wide Port Name of the HBA for which a persistent binding is to be set. This HBA can be either local or remote.

scope - P = binding is permanent (survives across reboot). I = binding is immediate. B = binding is both permanent and immediate.

bindtype - P = enable binding by WWPN. N = enable binding by WWNN. D = enable binding by D\_ID.

ID - Target WWPN if bindtype = P. Target WWNN if bindtype = N. Target D\_ID if bindtype = D

scsibus - Bus number of SCSI device.

scsitarget - Target number of SCSI device.



#### RemoveAllPersistentBinding

Syntax: HBACMD RemoveAllPersistentBinding <wwpn>

Description: Removes all persisting bindings associated with the referenced HBA. To remove all persistent bindings for 10:00:00:c9:21:5e:21, enter:

hbacmd removeallpersistentbinding 10:00:00:00:c9:21:5e:21

A sample response would be:

Remove All Persistent Binding for 10:00:00:00:c9:2e:51:2e

Parameters:

WWPN - The World Wide Port Name of the HBA for which all persistent bindings are to be removed. This HBA can be either local or remote.

#### RemovePersistentBinding

Syntax: HBACMD RemovePersistentBinding <wwpn> <bindtype> <ID> \ <scsibus> <scsitaraet>

Description: Removes a persistent binding between a Fibre Channel target and a SCSI bus and target. The binding to be removed can be to a target WWPN, target WWNN, or target D\_ID. To remove, on behalf of HBA 10:00:00:00:c9:2e:51:2e, the binding between target WWPN=20:00:00:d0:b2:00:30:40 and SCSI bus 1, target 3, enter:

hbacmd removepersistentbinding 10:00:00:00:c9:2e:51:2e P \ 20:00:00:d0:b2:00:30:40 1 3

To remove, on behalf of HBA 10:00:00:c9:2e:51:2e, the binding between target D\_ID=10101 and SCSI bus 1, target 3, enter:

```
hbacmd removepersistentbinding 10:00:00:00:c9:2e:51:2e D \ 10101 1 3
```

If there are no errors a response to the last example would be:

```
Remove Persistent Binding for 10:00:00:c9:2e:51:2e D \
10101 1 3
```

Parameters:

WWPN - The World Wide Port Name of the HBA for which a persistent binding is to be removed. This HBA can be either local or remote.

bindtype - P = enable binding by WWPN. N = enable binding by WWNN. D = enable binding by D\_ID.

ID - Target WWPN if bindtype = P. Target WWNN if bindtype = N. Target D\_ID if bindtype = D.

scsibus - Bus number of SCSI device.

scsitarget - Target number of SCSI device.

#### **BindingCapabilities**

Syntax: HBACMD BindingCapabilities < wwpn>

Description: Displays the binding capabilities present at the referenced HBA. To view the binding capabilities at 10:00:00:00:c9:21:5e:21, enter:

hbacmd bindingcapabilities 10:00:00:00:c9:21:5e:21



Sample response:

```
Binding Capability for 10:00:00:00:c9:2e:51:2e
Can bind to D_IDCan bind to WWPN
Can bind to WWNN
Can bind AUTOMAP
Can bind CONFIGURED
```

Parameters:

WWPN - The World Wide Port Name of the HBA whose binding capabilities are being queried. This HBA can be either local or remote.

#### **BindingSupport**

Syntax: HBACMD BindingSupport <wwpn> <source>

Description: Displays the binding support available at the reference HBA. The view the configured binding support for 10:00:00:c9:21:5e:21, enter:

hbacmd bindingsupport 10:00:00:00:c9:21:5e:21 C

Sample response:

```
Binding Support for 10:00:00:00:c9:2e:51:2e
Can bind to WWPN
Can bind AUTOMAP
```

Parameters:

WWPN - The World Wide Port Name of the HBA whose binding support is being queried. This HBA can be either local or remote.

source - C if the configured support is being queried. L if the live support is being queried.

#### SetBindingSupport

Syntax: HBACMD SetBindingSupport <wwpn> <bindflag>

Description: Sets the binding support(s) for the reference HBA. To enable binding support for WWPN and Automap on HBA 10:00:00:c0:c9:21:5e:21, enter:

hbacmd setbindingsupport 10:00:00:00:c9:21:5e:21 P1

Sample response:

```
Set Binding Support for 10:00:00:c9:21:5e:21 P1
```

Parameters:

WWPN - The World Wide Port Name of the HBA for which binding support is being set. This HBA can be either local or remote.

bindflag - 1 = enable support for Automap binding. 0 = disable support for Automap binding. P1 = enable support for WWPN binding and Automap. N1 = enable support for WWNN binding and Automap. D1 = enable support for D\_ID binding and Automap. P0 = enable support for P, disable Automap. N0 = enable support for N, disable Automap. D0 = enable support for D, disable Automap.

#### PortAttrib

Syntax: HBACMD PortAttrib <wwpn>



Description: Shows a list of all port attributes for the port with the specified WWPN. To view the port attributes for the HBA, type:

hbacmd portattrib 10:00:00:00:c9:20:08:cc Sample response: Port Attributes for 10:00:00:00:c9:4a:c5:90 Node WWN : 20 00 00 00 c9 4a c5 90 : 10 00 00 00 c9 4a c5 90 Port WWN Port Symname : : 11400 Port FCID : Fabric Port Type Port State : Operational Port Service Type : 12 Port Supported FC4 : 00 00 01 20 00 00 01 00 Port Active FC4 : 00 00 01 00 00 00 00 01 00 Port Supported Speed: Unknown Port Speed : 2 GBit/sec. Max Frame Size Max Frame Size : 2048 OS Device Name : /sys/class/scsi\_host/host10 Num Discovered Ports: 3 Fabric Name : 10 00 00 60 69 50 15 25

Parameters:

WWPN - The World Wide Port Name of the port. This port can be either local or remote.

#### **PortStat**

Syntax: HBACMD PortStat <wwpn>

Description: Shows all port statistics for the HBA with the specified WWPN. To view port statistics for the HBA, type:

hbacmd portstat 10:00:00:00:c9:20:08:cc

Sample response:

Port Statistics for 10:00:00:c9:20:08:cc

Buchenere Count		1406524
Exchange Count	:	1496534
Responder Exchange	Count:	37505
TX Seq Count	:	1588007
RX Seq Count	:	1561255
TX Frame Count	:	1588695
RX Frame Count	:	1561892
TX Word Count	:	19821312
RX Word Count	:	66368000
TX KB Count	:	77427
RX KB Count	:	259250
LIP Count	:	1
NOS Count	:	n/a
Error Frame Count	:	0
Dumped Frame Count	:	n/a



Link Failure Count	:	0
Loss of Sync Count	:	9
Loss of Signal Count	:	0
Prim Seq Prot Err Count	:	0
Invalid TX Word Count	:	0
nvalid RX Frame CRC Cnt	:	0
Link Transition Count	:	0
Active RPI Count	:	0
Active XRI Count	:	0
Rx Port Busy Count	:	0
Rx Fabric Busy Count	:	0
Primary Sequence Timeout	:	0
Elastic Buffer Overrun	:	0
Arbitration Timout	:	0

WWPN - The World Wide Port Name of the port. This port can be either local or remote.

#### ServerAttrib

Syntax: HBACMD ServerAttrib < WWPN>

Description: Shows a list of attributes of the server running locally to the specified HBA. To view the server attributes for the HBA, type:

hbacmd serverattrib 10:00:00:00:c9:20:08:cc

Sample response:

Server Attributes for 10:00:00:00:c9:4a:c5:90

Host Name : localhost.localdomain FW Resource Path: /usr/sbin/hbanyware/RMRepository/ DR Resource Path: /usr/sbin/hbanyware/RMRepository/ HBAnyware Server Version: 3.0

Parameters:

WWPN - The World Wide Port Name of any HBA local to the designated server. The HBA itself can be either local or remote.

#### TargetMapping

Syntax: HBACMD TargetMapping <wwpm>

Description: Shows a list of mapped targets and the LUNs attached to each for the port with the specified WWPN. To view the target mapping for 10:00:00:c9:20:08:0c, type:

hbacmd targetmapping 10:00:00:00:c9:20:08:0c

Sample response:

Target Mapping for 10:00:00:00:c9:4a:c5:90

FCP ID : 115E2 SCSI Bus Number: 0 SCSI Target Num: 0 Node WWN : 50:00:60:E8:02:78:6E:03 Port WWN : 50:00:60:E8:02:78:6E:03 Tgt Device Name: /dev/sdb
FCP LUN 00 : 0000 0000 0000



```
SCSI OS Lun : 0
Lun Device Name: /dev/sdb
Vendor ID : HITACHI
Product ID : OPEN-3
Product Version: 0118
SCSI Capacity : 2347 MB
Block Size : 512 Bytes
FCP LUN 01 : 0001 0000 0000 0000
SCSI OS Lun : 1
Lun Device Name: /dev/sdb
Vendor ID : HITACHI
Product ID : OPEN-3
Product Version: 0118
SCSI Capacity : 2347 MB
Block Size
                 : 512 Bytes

      FCP LUN 02
      : 0002 0000 0000 0000

      SCSI OS Lun
      : 2

Lun Device Name: /dev/sdb
Vendor ID : HITACHI
Product ID : OPEN-3
Product Version: 0118
SCSI Capacity : 2347 MB
Block Size : 512 Bytes
```

WWPN - The World Wide Port Name of the port. This port can be either local or remote.

#### Reset

Syntax: HBACMD Reset <wwpn>

Description: Resets the HBA with the specified WWPN. Resetting an HBA may require several seconds to complete, especially for remote devices. This command will return for additional input only after the reset has finished. To reset an HBA whose WWPN is 10:00:00:c9:e:51:2e, type:

```
hbacmd reset 10:00:00:00:c9:2e:51:2e
```

Sample response:

```
Reset HBA 10:00:00:00:c9:2e:51:2e
```

Parameters:

WWPN - The World Wide Port Name of the port. This port can be either local or remote.

#### Download

Syntax: HBACMD Download <wwpn> <filename>

Description: Loads the specified firmware image to the HBA with the specified WWPN. To load the firmware image located in hdc190a4.dwc to an HBA with WWPN 10:00:00:c9:2e:51:2e, type:

hbacmd download 10:00:00:00:c9:2e:51:2e hdc190a4.dwc

Sample response for a successful download:

Downloading hdc190a4.dwc to hba 10:00:00:00:c9:2e:51:2e Download Complete.



WWPN - The World Wide Port Name of the HBA that is the target of the firmware download. This HBA can be either local or remote.

FileName - The file name of the firmware image you want to load. This can be any file accessible to the CLI client application.

#### AllNodeInfo

Syntax: HBACMD AllNodeInfo <wwpn>

Description: Shows target node information for each target accessible from the specified HBA. To view the target node data for 10:00:00:c9:20:0d:36, type:

Hbacmd allnodeinfo 10:00:00:00:c9:20:0d:36

Sample response:

```
All Node Info for 10:00:00:c9:4a:c5:90

Node Type : EXIST

FCP ID : 115E2

SCSI Bus Number: 0

SCSI Target Num: 0

Node WWN : 50:00:60:E8:02:78:6E:03

Port WWN : 50:00:60:E8:02:78:6E:03

OS Device Name : /sys/class/scsi host/host10/device/target10:0:0
```

Parameters:

WWPN - The World Wide Port Name of the HBA whose target node information you want to query. This HBA can be either local or remote.

#### DriverConfig

Syntax: HBACMD driverconfig <wwpn> elxconfig.dpv <ctrlword>

Description: Sets all driver parameters for the HBA specified by WWPN to the driver parameter values contained in the driver parameter file (elxconfig.dpv in the above example). These files can be easily generated via the HBAnyware Driver Parameter tab. Driver types must match between .dpv file type and host platform HBA.

For example, type:

hbacmd driverconfig 10:00:00:00:c9:2e:51:2e elxconfig G

Below is a sample response:

hbacmd: Success setting driver configuration parameters to values in .dpv file.

Parameters:

WWPN - The World Wide Port Name of the HBA on which to set driver parameters.

ctrlword - G = save the global parameter set.

#### **DriverParams**

Syntax: HBACMD DriverParams < wwpn>

Description: Shows the name and values of each driver parameter for the selected HBA. To view the driver parameters for HBA 10:00:00:c9:2e:51:2e, type:

hbacmd driverparams 10:00:00:00:c9:2e:51:2e



#### Sample (abbreviated) response:

Driver Params for 10:00:00:00:c9:4a:c5:90. Values in HEX format.

DX	string	Low	High	Def	Cur	Exp	Dyn
00	log-verbose	0	ffff	0	20	1	1
01	lun-queue-depth	1	80	1e	1e	1	4
02	scan-down	0	1	1	1	1	4
03	nodev-tmo	0	ff	1e	3c	1	1
04	topology	0	6	0	0	1	4
05	link-speed	0	4	0	0	1	4
06	fcp-class	2	3	3	3	1	4
07	use-adisc	0	1	0	1	1	1
08	ack0	0	1	0	0	1	4
09	fcp-bind-method	1	4	2	2	1	4
0a	cr-delay	0	3f	0	0	1	4
0b	cr-count	1	ff	1	1	1	4
0c	fdmi-on	0	2	0	0	1	4
0d	discovery-threads	1	40	20	20	1	4
0e	max-luns	1	8000	100	100	1	4

#### Parameters:

WWPN - The World Wide Port Name of the HBA whose driver parameters you want to view. This HBA can be either local or remote.

#### DriverParamsGlobal

Syntax: HBACMD DriverParamsGlobal <wwpn>

Description: Shows the name and the global value of each driver parameter for the selected HBA. To view the global driver parameters for HBA 10:00:00:c9:2e:51:2e, type:

```
hbacmd driverparamsglobal 10:00:00:00:c9:2e:51:2e
```

Sample (abbreviated) response:

Driver Params (Global) for 10:00:00:00:c9:2e:51:2e. Values in HEX.

DX	string	Low	High	Def	Cur	Exp	Dyn
00	AbortStatus	0	ff	е	е	1	1
01	ARBTOV	1f4	4e20	5dc	5dc	1	5
02	BlinkTimeOut	1	1E	8	8	1	0
03	Class	1	2	2	2	1	1
04	CrfIntrpt	0	1	0	0	1	5
05	CrfMsCnt	0	3f	0	0	1	5
06	CrfRspCnt	0	ff	0	0	1	5
07	DebugMask	0	effffff	0	0	0	5
08	DisableAck0	0	1	0	0	1	5
09	DiscMethod	0	1	1	0	1	1
0a	DiscoveryDelay	0	7	0	0	1	1
0b	ElsRetryCount	1	ff	1	1	1	1
0c	ElsRjtCount	0	ff	2d	2d	1	1
0d	ElsTimeOut	0	1	0	0	1	1



0e	EmulexOption	0	7fffffff	d200	da00	1	0
Of	EnableDPC	0	1	0	1	1	1
10	ErrRetryMax	0	ffffffe	1	1	1	1
11	FrameSizeMSB	0	8	0	0	1	5
12	HardAddress	0	1	0	0	1	0
13	HlinkTimeOut	0	ff	1e	1e	1	1
14	InitialDelay	0	1	1	1	1	0
15	LinkSpeed	0	10	0	0	1	1
16	LinkTimeOut		1f4	3c	3c	1	1
17	LipFFrecovery	0	1	0	0	1	1
18	LogErrors	0	1	0	0	1	1
19	MapNodeName	0	1	0	0	1	0
1a	NodeTimeOut	0	ff	14	14	1	1
1b	QueueAction	0	2	0	0	1	1
1c	QueueDepth	1	ff	20	20	1	1
1d	QueueTarget	0	1	0	0	1	5
1e	QueueIncStep	0	100	2	2	1	1
1f	RegFcpType	0	1	1	1	1	1
20	ResetFF	0	1	0	0	1	1
21	ResetTPRLO	0	2	0	0	1	1
22	RetryNodePurge	0	1	1	1	1	1
23	RTTOV	а	ff	64	64	1	5

WWPN -The World Wide Port Name of the HBA whose driver parameters you want to view. This HBA can be either local or remote.

#### **SetDriverParam**

**Note:** This command may only be used with the lpfc\_log\_verbose, lpfc\_use\_adisc and lpfc\_nodev\_tmo parameters.

Syntax: HBACMD SetDriverParam <wwpn> <ctrlword> <param> <value>

Description: Changes the value of the specified driver parameter that is operating the referenced HBA, and designates the scope of that change. For example, to change the value of the log\_verbose parameter for 10:00:00:00:c9:2e:51:2e and make it global, type:

hbacmd SetDriverParam 10:00:00:00:c9:2e:51:2e g log verbose 3

Sample response:

```
Set Driver Parameter log_verbose=3(g) for 10:00:00:c9:2e:51:2e
```

Parameters:

WWPN - The World Wide Port Name of the HBA whose Boot BIOS you want to modify. This HBA can be either local or remote.

ctrlword - G = make change global , B = make change both permanent and global, N = make change neither permanent nor global

param - The name of the parameter whose value you want to modify. You can only use the log\_verbose, use\_adisc and \_nodev\_tmo parameters. Do not preceed these commands with lpfc\_. For example use log\_verbose not lpfc\_log\_verbose.



Value - The new value you want to assign to the parameter.

#### **SetBootBios**

Syntax: HBACMD SetBootBios <wwpn> <ctrlword>

Description: Enables or disables the Boot BIOS on the referenced HBA. To enable the Boot BIOS for 10:00:00:c9:2e:51:2e, type:

hbacmd setbootbios 10:00:00:00:c9:2e:51:2e E

Parameters:

WWPN - The World Wide Port Name of the HBA whose Boot BIOS you want to modify. This HBA can be either local or remote.

ctrlword - E = enable the Boot BIOS, D = disable the Boot BIOS.

#### PciData

Syntax: HBACMD PciData <wwpn>

Description: Shows PCI configuration data for the HBA specified by the WWPN. To show PCI configuration data for HBA 10:00:00:c9:2e:51:2e, type:

hbacmd pcidata 10:00:00:00:c9:2e:51:2e

Sample response:

Vendor ID:	0x10DF	Device ID:	0xF0D5
Command:	0x0157	Status:	0x0230
Revision ID:	0x01	Prog If:	0x00
Subclass:	0x04	Base Class:	0x0C
Cache Line Size:	0x20	Latency Timer:	0xF8
Header Type:	0x00	Built In Self Test:	0x00
Base Address 0:	0xE0001004	Base Address 1:	
0x0000000			
Base Address 2:	0xE000004	Base Address 3:	
0x0000000			
Base Address 4:	0x0000C001	Base Address 5:	
0x0000000			
CIS:	0x00000000	SubVendor ID:	0x10DF
SubSystem ID:	0xF0D5	ROM Base Address:	0x00000000
Interrupt Line:	OxFF	Interrupt Pin:	0x01
Minimum Grant:	OxFF	Maximum Latency:	0x00
Capabilities Ptr:	0x5C	-	

Parameters:

WWPN - The World Wide Port Name of the HBA whose PCI configuration data you want to show.

#### Wakeup

Syntax: HBACMD wakeup <wwpn>

Description: Shows wakeup parameter data for the HBA specified by the WWPN. To show wakeup parameter data for HBA 10:00:00:c9:2e:51:2e, type:

```
hbacmd wakeup 10:00:00:00:c9:2e:51:2e
```



Sample response:

Wakeup Parameters:		
Initial Load:	0x02C03992	0x00103411
Flags:	0x0000000	
Boot BIOS	0x03433290	0x00101303
SLI-1:	0x06433992	0x00103411
SLI-2:	0x07433992	0x00103411
Has Expansion ROM	0	

Parameters:

WWPN - The World Wide Port Name of the HBA whose wakeup parameter data you want to show.

#### LoopMap

Syntax: HBACMD loopmap <wwpn>

Description: Shows the arbitrated loop map data for the HBA specified by the WWPN. To show the arbitrated loop map data for HBA 10:00:00:c9:2e:51:2e, type:

hbacmd loopmap 10:00:00:00:c9:2e:51:2e

Below is a sample response:

AL\_PA: 01 Local Adapter E8 SCSI Device E4 SCSI Device CA SCSI Device

Parameters:

WWPN - The World Wide Port Name of the HBA whose loopmap you want to show.

#### GetBeacon

Syntax: HBACMD getbeacon <wwpn>

Description: Shows the current beacon status for the HBA specified by the WWPN. To show the current beacon status for HBA 10:00:00:c9:2e:51:2e, type:

For example, type:

hbacmd getbeacon 10:00:00:00:c9:2e:51:2e

Possible responses are:

Beacon State = On Beacon State = Off Unable to get Beacon state, error 1 Beaconing not supported on host or adapter

Parameters:

WWPN - The World Wide Port Name of the HBA whose beacon status you want to show.

#### SetBeacon

Syntax: HBACMD setbeacon <wwpn> <state>



Description: Sets the current beacon status for the HBA specified by the WWPN. To set the current beacon status for HBA 10:00:00:c0:c9:2e:51:2e to off, type:

hbacmd setbeacon 10:00:00:00:c9:2e:51:2e 0

To set the current beacon status for HBA 10:00:00:00:c9:2e:51:2e to on, type:

hbacmd setbeacon 10:00:00:00:c9:2e:51:2e 1

Possible responses are:

Beacon State successfully set to On Beacons State successfully set to Off Unable to get Beacon state, error 1 Beaconing not supported on host or adapter

Parameters:

WWPN -The World Wide Port Name of the HBA whose beacon status you want to set. This HBA can be either local or remote.

State - The new state of the beacon: 0 = beacon OFF, 1= beacon ON

#### PostTest

Syntax: HBACMD posttest <wwpn>

Description: Runs the POST test on the HBA specified by the WWPN. Support for remote HBA is out-ofband (Ethernet) only. To run the POST test for HBA 10:00:00:c9:2e:51:2e, type:

hbacmd posttest 10:00:00:00:c9:2e:51:2e

Sample response:

Running POST, polling for results..... Power On Self Test Succeeded; time to execute = 8928 ms

Parameters:

WWPN - The World Wide Port Name of the HBA on which to run the POST test.

#### EchoTest

Syntax: HBACMD echotest <wwpn1> <wwpn2> <count> <StopOnError>

Description: Runs the echo test on the HBAs specified by the WWPN1 and WWPN2.

**Note:** Support for remote HBA is out-of-band (Ethernet) only. The EchoTest command will fail if the target WWPN does not support the ECHO ELS command.

To run the echo test for HBA 10:00:00:c9:2e:51:2e, type:

hbacmd echotest 10:00:00:00:c9:2e:51:2e 10:00:00:c9:2e:51:45 10 1

Sample response:

Echo test: polling for results..... Echo test succeeded; time to execute = 53 ms.

Parameters:

WWPN1 - The World Wide Port Name of the originating HBA.

WWPN2 - The World Wide Port Name of the destination (echoing) HBA.



Count - The number of times to run the test.

StopOnError - Should the test be halted on Error? 0 = no halt, 1 = halt

#### Loopback

Syntax: HBACMD loopback <wwpn> <type> <count> <StopOnError>

Description: Runs the loop test on the HBA specified by the WWPN.

**Note:** Only external Loopback tests must be run out-of-band.

To run the loop test for HBA 10:00:00:c9:2e:51:2e, type:

hbacmd loopback 10:00:00:00:c9:2e:51:2e 1 10 0

Sample response:

Running Loopback: polling for results..... Loopback Test Failed; xmit errors = 3; rcv errors = 2; time to execute = 1015 ms.

Parameters:

WWPN - The World Wide Port Name of the HBA on which to run the loopback test(s).

Type -Type of loopback test where: 0 = PCI LoopBack Test, 1 = Internal LoopBack Test, 2 = External LoopBack Test

Count - The number of times to run the test (Range = 1,...10000).

StopOnError -Should the test be halted on Error? 0 = no halt, 1 = halt

#### Dump

Syntax: HBACMD dump <wwpn>

Description: Runs the dump diagnostic retrieval command on the HBA specified by the WWPN. This command is supported for local HBAs only. The file by default is located in: /usr/sbin/hbanyware/Dump

To run the dump diagnostic retrieval command for HBA 10:00:00:00:c9:2e:51:2e, type:

```
hbacmd dump 10:00:00:00:c9:2e:51:2e
```

Parameters:

WWPN- The World Wide Port Name of the HBA on which to you want to run the dump.

#### DeleteDumpFiles

Syntax: HBACMD deletedumpfiles <wwpn>

Description: Deletes all dump files associated with the HBA specified by the WWPN. To delete all dump files for HBA 10:00:00:c0:c9:2e:51:2e, type::

hbacmd deletedumpfiles 10:00:00:00:c9:2e:51:2e

Sample response:

HBACMD: Dump file deletion complete.

Parameters:

WWPN - The World Wide Port Name of the HBA whose dump files you want to delete.



# Starting the Iputil Utility

The LightPulse diagnostic utility (Iputil) is installed automatically when the driver utilities kit is installed.

Start the utility by entering the complete path to lputil. The path reflects the default installation path. If the installation path changed, you will need to adjust the command appropriately.

To start the lputil utility type:

/usr/sbin/lpfc/lputil

# **No-Reboot Features**

The Emulex 6.11c SPARC driver enables you to do the following without rebooting:

- Discover newly provisioned Targets and LUNs.
- Add new adapters to the system.
- Make persistent binding changes.
- Make other driver configuration changes.
- Turn on the log capability (log-verbose).
- Update adapter firmware.
- Load or unload the driver.

# **Discovering New Targets and LUNS**

#### Solaris 9 and 10 Users

Perform these steps to make targets and LUNs visible even if the unassigned targets and LUNs weren't contained in sd.conf since the last reboot.

To discover new targets and LUNs:

- 1. Edit the sd.conf file. (Ensure that the new targets and LUNs are identified in this configration file.)
- 2. Run "update\_drv -f sd". Newly provisioned targets and LUNs should now be seen.

Note: Note the space between -f, for "force", and sd, for the conf file to be re-read

See the man pages for more information on this command.

3. If LUNs are not available, run "devfsadm" from the command prompt.



#### Solaris 8 Users- Unassigned Targets and LUNs Provisioned in sd.conf at Last Reboot

Perform the following steps to make targets and LUNS visible to the system:

- If the Automap parameter of lpfc.conf was turned ON at the last reboot, use the "devfsadm" command to make targets and LUNS visible to the system. See the man pages for more information on this command.
- If the Automap parameter was turned OFF at the last reboot, you can specify the SCSI ID using the HBAnyware utility. These bindings take effect immediately without unloading and reloading the driver.

**Note:** The Emulex driver for Solaris does not take up memory space for unassigned targets.

#### Solaris 8 Users - Unassigned Targets and LUNs Not Provisioned in sd.conf

This procedure enables new Targets and LUNs to be seen when the unassigned Targets and LUNs were not previously specified in sd.conf.

**Note:** On some SPARC systems (i.e. E250 and E450), the boot drive uses the sd driver to boot. You cannot unload and reload sd on these systems and therefore you must reboot unless you are using Solaris 9 or 10.

To unload sd-attached applications and unload/reload the sd driver:

- 1. Ensure the automap parameter in lpfc.conf is turned on (value =1) since the last reboot.
- To unload the sd driver, all other drivers and applications attached to it must be unloaded or halted. In cases where the boot driver is controlled by a driver other than sd (i.e. E3/4/5/6500, V880, SunFire 4800), LUNs can be added dynamically with a few simple steps.
- 3. Unmount file systems attached to sd driver. Type:

umountall

4. Stop the vold daemon. Type:

# /etc/rc2.d/S92volmgt stop

5. Identify the module ID of sd driver and unload it. Type:

```
# modinfo | grep sd
A SunFire V880 displays:
19 101efd55 10a60 118 1 ssd (SCSI SSA/FCAL Disk Driver 1.147)
138 78148000 183d0 32 1 sd (SCSI Disk Driver 1.359)
In this case type:
# modunload -i 138
(The module ID is from the message above.)
```

- 6. Edit /kernel/drv/sd.conf to add or remove LUNs and/or targets.
- 7. Run the commands to discover new LUNs and/or targets. Type:

```
# devfsadm
```

This command automatically loads the sd driver, scans for new devices, and creates the necessary /dev/dsk and /dev/rdsk links.

If the devfsadm command is not recognized type:

```
# drvconfig
# disks
```



- 8. Re-start the vold daemon. Type:
  - # /etc/rc2.d/S92volmgt start
- 9. Mount the file systems. Type:
  - # mountall

### **Removing Ghost LUNS**

Ghost devices are targets that have been disconnected since the last reboot, but remain in the Solaris sd configuration. While the presence of these ghost devices does not create any runtime issues, they can slow down certain processes and also cause confusion.

The procedure for removing ghost devices is identical to the one used for discovering targets and LUNs. Refer to the "Discovering New LUNS and Targets" topic on page 57 to learn how to remove ghost devices.

# Adding New Adapters, Changing Bindings and Changing Driver Parameters

#### For Solaris 9 and 10 Users

To add new adapters, change bindings and change driver parameters:

- 1. Login as 'root' or su to 'root'.
- 2. If you are adding an adapter not previously seen by the server:
  - a. Check for the following three conditions:
    - Ensure your Solaris host supports DR.
    - Use adapter firmware that supports DR.
    - Ensure the adapters are installed in DR capable PCI slots.
  - b. Power off a DR enabled PCI slot.
  - c. Insert the adapter and power up the slot.
- 3. Make driver parameter changes using the HBAnyware utility. (Refer to the HBAnyware utility topics in this manual for more information.) Be sure to make changes static. Static changes make the changes in memory and modify the lpfc.conf file so that if the host is rebooted, the driver parameters retain their intended values.

**Note:** Some driver parameters are dynamic. If a reboot is necessary, the HBAnyware utility prompts you to reboot. In that case, complete steps #4 - #9. If you unconfigured the adapters in step 7, you must reconfigure them in step 11.

- 4. Stop the elxhbamgr. (Stop the HBAnyware utility.)
- 5. If you must change or add target numbers and/or LUN numbers in sd.conf, make these modifications now.
- 6. Run the "cfgadm" command. You will see a list of controllers and their Ap\_id numbers.
- 7. Unconfigure all lpfc driver instances using their Ap\_id. Type: "cfgadm -d unconfigure Ap\_id ..."
- 8. Type "modinfo | grep lpfc" and note the process number at the beginning of the returned string. It may look similar to: 85 7ba44000 525d0 269 1 lpfc (Emulex Lightpulse FC SCSI/IP).
- 9. Type "modunload -i 85". Replace "85" with your host's module-id number.
- 10. Run "update\_drv -f sd". This forces Solaris to re-read sd.conf.
- 11. Run "cfgadm -c configure Ap\_id Ap\_id Ap\_id". This example shows how to configure the entire list of lpfc driver instances you unconfigured in step 7 using one command. If you unconfigured more then one lpfc instance, separate each Ap\_id with a space.



#### For Solaris 8 Users

The procedure for Solaris 8 and earlier is a little different because you may not be able to unload the sd driver on the fly. This procedure does not rely on DR support.

To add new adapters, change bindings and change driver parameters:

- 1. Login as or su to 'root'.
- 2. If you booted the system via SCSI, you cannot use this procedure as root is linked to the SCSI drive. Proceed to step 3 and then to step 11.
- 3. Make driver parameter changes using the HBAnyware utility. (Refer to the the HBAnyware utility topics in this manual for more information.) Be sure to make changes Static. Static changes make the changes in memory and modify the lpfc.conf file so that if the host is rebooted, the driver parameters retain their intended values.

**Note:** Some driver parameters are dynamic. If a reboot is necessary, the HBAnyware utility will indicate this. In that case, complete steps #4 - #11.

- 4. If you must change or add target numbers and/or lun numbers in sd.conf, make these modifications now.
- 5. Type "modinfo | grep sd" and note the module-id number at the beginning of the returned string. It may look similar to: 121 8cb16704 316b1 373 1 sd
- 6. Type "modunload -i 121". Replace "121" with the host's process number.
  - a. If this fails, stop the vold daemon. Type: "# /etc/rc2.d/S92volmgt stop".
  - b. If this is successful, again attempt to modunload the sd driver. If this fails, see step 11.
- 7. If the sd driver unloaded successfully, stop the elxhbamgr. (Stop the HBAnyware utility.)
- 8. Type "modinfo | grep lpfc" and note the process number at the beginning of the returned string. It may look similar to: 85 7ba44000 525d0 269 1 lpfc (Emulex Lightpulse FC SCSI/IP).
- 9. Type "modunload -i 85". Replace "85" with the host's process number.
- Type "devfsadm". The sd and lpfc drivers will be reloaded automatically. The Volume Management daemon can now be started manually (i.e # /etc/rc2.d/S92volmgt start). If new devices do not appear continue to step 11.
- 11. Verify that the lpfc.conf parameters contain the values you want and reboot the host to enable them.

#### **Turning on Logging Capability**

The Solaris 6.11c driver enables you to turn on or off the log-verbose parameter for problem tracking using the HBAnyware utility. Refer to the HBAnyware utility topics in this manual for more information.

#### **No-Reboot Firmware Updates**

Emulex is the only vendor providing dynamic adapter firmware updates during operation without stopping I/O traffic. You can dynamically update host bus adapter firmware using the HBAnyware utility. Refer to the "Update Firmware" topics in this manual for more information about using the HBAnyware utility.



# Loading or Unloading the Driver Without Rebooting

**Note:** When the Solaris operating system is installed on a Fibre Channel drive, you must reboot the system because you cannot quiesce all I/O on the OS drive.

Systems must support dynamic reconfiguration.

To load the driver without rebooting:

- 1. Load the driver using the "modload" command.
- 2. Use the "cfgadm" command to configure Emulex HBAs.
- 3. Restart I/O.

To unload the driver without rebooting:

- 1. Stop all I/O on the device.
- 2. Use the "cfgadm" command to disconnect Emulex HBAs.
- 3. Unload the driver using the modunload command.



# **Discovering HBAs**

You can discover HBAs using either the HBAnyware or lputil utilities.

- The HBAnyware utility allows you to discover both local and remote HBAs.
- The lputil utility allows you to discover only local HBAs.

# **Discovering HBAs Using the HBAnyware Utility**

Local and remote HBAs are discovered automatically when you launch the HBAnyware utility. Initially, both local and remote HBAs are displayed.

You can also discover HBAs on out-of-band (OOB) hosts. For more information, see "Out-of-Band Access" on page 31.

**Note:** The HBAnyware utility must be installed and the elxhbamgr process(es) must be running on all remote hosts that you want to discover and manage.

Remote in-band capabilities of the HBAnyware utility are subject to fabric zoning configuration. Remote hosts you want to discover and manage using the HBAnyware utility must be in the same zone or discovered and managed out-of-band through an Ethernet connection.



Figure 5: HBAnyware Utility, Discovery Information

**Note:** Emulex recommends setting the monitor display resolution to 1024x768 as a minimum to properly view the HBAnyware utility.



# **Configuring Discovery Settings**

Use the HBAnyware Discovery Settings dialog box to configure several discovery server parameters. You can define when to start the discovery server, when to refresh in-band and out-of-band discoveries and when to remove previously discovered HBAs that are no longer being discovered.

HBAnyware Discovery Settings	J			
Discovery Server Startup	٦			
Select when to start the discovery server:				
When system starts				
First time the management application is started after system boot				
Refresh Rate				
Select when to start a new discovery cycle after a previous cycle completes:				
In-Band (Fibre-Channel)				
Manual refresh (requires pressing discovery refresh button)	Manual refresh (requires pressing discovery refresh button)			
Refresh every 15 seconds (minimum 5)				
Out-of-Band (TCP/IP)				
Manual refresh (requires pressing discovery refresh button)				
Refresh every 45 seconds (minimum 5)				
Undiscovered HBA Expiration				
Select when to remove a previously discovered HBA that is no longer being discovered:				
Never remove				
Remove after 1800 seconds (0=immediately)				
Defaults OK Cancel				

Figure 6: HBAnyware Utility, HBA Discovery Settings Dialog Box

To configure discovery settings:

- 1. Start the HBAnyware utility.
- 2. From the menu bar, select Discovery/Modify Settings. The Discovery Settings dialog box appears.
- 3. Define the discovery properties you wish and click **OK**. Click **Defaults** to return the discovery properties to their default settings.



# **Discovering HBAs Using the Iputil Utility**

When you start the lputil utility, all local HBAs are discovered and listed with information such as the HBA number, instance number (i.e. lpfc0), board model type and whether the HBA is ready to use.

To discover HBAs using the lputil utility:

From the Main menu, enter 1, List Adapters.

MAIN MENU	
1. List Adapters 2. Adapter Information 3. Firmware Maintenance 4. Reset Adapter 0. Exit	9
Enter choice => 1	

Figure 7: The Iputil Utility Main Menu

# **Sorting HBA Information**

# Sorting HBAs Using the HBAnyware Utility

Sort discovered HBAs by host name, fabric name, HBA name, target name and LUN number. You can also choose to view local HBAs or remote HBAs. By default, both local and remote HBAs are sorted by host name/fabric name.

To sort HBAs:

- 1. Start the HBAnyware utility.
- 2. Switch between host name or fabric ID in one of two ways:
  - From the menu bar: click **View**, then click **Sort by Host Name** or **Sort by Fabric ID.** The current adapter display mode is checked.
  - From the toolbar, click one of the following buttons:

Sort HBAs by Host Name (default).

1000	
	-
100	

Sort HBAs by Fabric ID.

3. The HBAnyware utility sorts in ascending order. The sort recognizes letters, numbers, spaces and punctuation marks.

夁

## Sort by Host Name

- Initially sorts by host name. You cannot change host names using the HBAnyware utility; names must be changed locally on that system.
- Within each host system, sorts by HBA model.
- If multiple HBAs have the same model number, sorts models by World Wide Node Name (WWNN).



- If targets are present, sorts by World Wide Port Name (WWPN). Multiple HBAs may refer to the same target.
- If LUNs are present, sorts by LUN number.

### Sort by Fabric Address

- Initially sorts by fabric ID.
- Within each fabric ID, sorts by HBA model.
- If multiple HBAs have the same model number, sorts models by WWNN.
- If targets are present, sorts by WWPN. Multiple HBAs may refer to the same target.
- If LUNs are present, sorts by LUN number.
- If the fabric ID is all zeros, no fabric is attached.

# Sorting Local HBAs Only Using the HBAnyware Utility

Displays local HBA's only. Works in conjunction with the Sort by Host Name and Sort by Fabric ID buttons. To display local HBAs only, do one of the following:

- From the menu bar: click **View**, then click **Local HBAs Only**. The current adapter display mode is checked.
- From the toolbar, click the Local HBAs Only 🚺 button.

# Sorting Local HBAs Using Iputil

Local HBAs are automatically displayed.

# Viewing HBA Information Using the HBAnyware Utility

## **Viewing Discovery Information**

The Discovery Information area contains a general summary of the discovered elements. The Host or Fabric icon, depending upon which view you select, is the root of the discovery-tree, but it does not represent a specific network element. Expanding it will reveal all hosts, LUNs, targets and HBAs that are visible on the storage area network (SAN).

To view the discovery information:

1. Start the HBAnyware utility.


2. Click the **Host** or **Fabric** icon at the root of the discovery-tree. Discovered SAN elements appear in the discovery-tree. Select an element from the discovery-tree to learn more about it.

i≪HBAnyware Utility				LOX
Elle Yew Adapter Discovery Batch Help				
◎■ 罰●圖 %				
문 🍰 Nosts 승.윤 WIN03SP1-TEST	Discovery Information			^
☐ ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐	Number of Hosts:	2		
21:00:00:04:CF:SD:CF:3A	Number of Fabrics:	0		
<ul> <li>■ 21:00:00:04:CF:SD:CF:8F</li> <li>■ 21:00:00:04:CF:5D:D3:71</li> </ul>	Number of Adapters:	2		
	Number of Targets:	6		
E				, 
	•			<u> </u>
3	lace the cursor over an item in th	e window above to receive a	help description about th	hat item.

Figure 8: HBAnyware Utility, Discovery Information

#### **Discovery Information Field Definitions**

- Number of Hosts The total number of discovered host computers. This includes servers, workstations, personal computers, multiprocessors and clustered computer complexes.
- Number of Fabrics The total number of discovered fabrics.
- Number of Adapters The total number of discovered HBAs.
- Number of Targets The total number of unique discovered targets on the SAN. In the discovery-tree, the same target can appear under more than one HBA.

### **Viewing Host Information**

There are two tabs that show host information: the Host Information tab and the host Driver Parameters tab. The Host Information tab is read-only. The host Driver Parameters tab enables you to view and define HBA driver settings for a specific host.

To view the Host Information and Driver Parameters tabs:

- 1. Start the HBAnyware utility.
- 2. Do one of the following:
  - From the menu bar, click View, then click Sort by Host Name.
  - From the toolbar, click the Sort by Host Name button.
- 3. Select a host in the discovery-tree.
- 4. Select the Host Information tab (see Figure 9) or the Host Driver Parameters tab (Figure 10).



### The Host Information Tab

36HBAnyware Utility		. D X
Elle Yew Adapter Discovery Estch Help		
日日 習生物 3		
■       Docovered Denerits         ■       ■	Host Information Driver Parameters Number of Adapters: Number of Fabrics: Number of Fabrics: Number of Targets: Remote Manager Server Version: Host IP Address:	2 1 5 2 3a6 Hot discovered in-band

Figure 9: HBAnyware Utility, Host Information Tab

#### **Host Information Field Definitions**

- Number of Adapters The number of HBAs installed in the host.
- Number of Fabrics The number of fabrics to which this host is attached.
- Number of Targets The number of storage devices seen by the host.
- Remote Manager Server Version The version of the HBAnyware utility server that is running on the host. If different versions of the HBAnyware utility are installed on different hosts in the SAN, those differences appear in this field.
- Host IP Address If the host is discovered in-band, the dialog box displays "Host discovered inband." If the host is discovered out-of-band, the dialog box displays the host's IP address, e.g., 138.239.82.131.

#### The Host Driver Parameters Tab

The Host Driver Parameters tab (Figure 10) enables you to view and edit the HBA driver settings contained in a specific host. The host driver parameters are global values and apply to all HBAs in that host unless they are overridden by parameters assigned to a specific HBA using the HBA Driver Parameters tab. For each parameter, the tab shows the current value, the range of acceptable values, the default value, and whether the parameter is dynamic (a dynamic parameter allows the change to take effect without resetting the HBA or rebooting the system).



For more information on changing the parameters for a single HBA, see "Setting Driver Parameters for an HBA" on page 89. For more information changing the parameters for the host, see "Setting Driver Parameters for a Host" on page 91.



Figure 10: HBAnyware Utility, Driver Parameters Tab - Host Selected

**Note:** If there is more than one driver type installed, the Installed Driver Types menu shows a list of all driver types and driver versions that are installed on the HBAs in the host.

#### **Driver Parameter Tab Field Definitions**

- Installed Driver Type The current driver and version installed.
- Adapter Parameter table A list of HBA driver parameters and their current values.
- Parameter-specific information The details about the parameter appears on the right side of the tab.

#### **Driver Parameter Tab Buttons**

- **Restore** Click to save and restore parameters to this last saved value, if you have made changes to parameters and have not saved them by clicking **Apply**.
- Defaults Click to reset all parameter values to their default (out-of-box) values.
- **Apply** Click to apply any driver parameter changes. If you changed a parameter that is not dynamic, you must unload the driver and reload it.

### **Viewing General HBA Attributes**

The General tab contains general attributes associated with the selected HBA.

To view general attributes:

1. Start the HBAnyware utility.



- 2. Select Host or Fabric sort.
- 3. Click an HBA in the discovery-tree.



Figure 11: HBAnyware Utility, General Tab

### **Adapter Summary Field Definitions**

- Model The complete model name of the HBA.
- Port WWN The Port World Wide Name of the HBA.
- Node WWN the Node World Wide Name of the selected HBA.
- Fabric Name or Host Name The Fabric Name field shows if you selected, "Sort by Host Name". The fabric name is a 64-bit worldwide unique identifier assigned to the fabric. The Host Name field shows if you selected "Sort by Fabric ID". The host name is the name of the host containing the HBA.
- Driver Version The version of the driver installed for the HBA.
- Firmware Version The version of Emulex firmware currently active on the HBA.
- Driver Name The executable file image name for the driver as it appears in the Emulex driver download package.
- Boot Bios Indicates if the boot code is enabled or disabled.

#### **Adapter Status Area Field Definitions**

State - The current operational state of the HBA: "Up" or "Down".

Link Status - The current link status between the HBA and the fabric. There are several possible states:

- The "Operational" state indicates that the HBA is connected to the network and operating normally.
- All other states indicate that the HBA is not connected to the network. Green HBA icons with red descriptive text indicate that the HBA is offline. These offline states are:



- "User offline" The HBA is down or not connected to the network.
- "Bypassed" the HBA is in Fibre Channel discovery mode.
- "Diagnostic Mode" The HBA is controlled by a diagnostic program.
- "Link Down" There is no access to the network.
- "Port Error" The HBA is in an unknown state; try resetting it.
- "Loopback" -an FC-1 mode in which information passed to the FC-1 transmitter is shunted directly to the FC-1 Receiver. When a FC interface is in loopback mode, the loopback signal overrides any external signal detected by the receiver.
- "Unknown" -The HBA is offline for an unknown reason.
- Link Speed The link speed of the HBA in gigabits per second.

# **Viewing Detailed HBA Information**

The Adapter Details tab in the HBAnyware utility contains detailed information associated with the selected HBA.

To view the detailed attributes:

- 1. Start the HBAnyware utility.
- 2. Select Host or Fabric sort.
- 3. Select an HBA in the discovery-tree.
- 4. Select the Adapter Details tab.

Heldsynwere Utilky lie Yiew Adapter <u>D</u> iscovery <u>B</u> atch <u>H</u> elp			
) (m) (m) (m) (m) (m) (m) (m) (m) (m) (m			
🏚 Discovered Dements	Firmware Target Map General	ping Driver Parameters Adapter Details	Diagnostics Statistics
B J 1150-14 - 10:00:00:00:39:4/     B J 1150-14 - 10:00:00:00:39:4/     B J 1150-14 - 10:00:00:00:39:4/     B J 11000-14 - 10:00:00:00:39:4/     B J 11000-10:00:00:00:39:42:0     B J 10:0000-10:00:00:00:35     B J 10:0000-10:00:00:00:00:35     B J 10:0000-10:00:00:00:00:00:35     B J 10:0000-10:00:00:00:00:00:35     B J 10:0000-10:00:00:00:00:00:00:35     B J 10:0000-10:00:00:00:00:00:00:00:00:00:00:00:00:0	Adapter Details Node Symbolic Name: Hardware Version: Serial Number: Discovered Ports: Device ID: t	1036406d 8G54221819 0 1d00	
→	-Port Attributes Port FC ID: Port Type: OS Device Name: Supported Class of Service: Supported FC4 Types:	10 Private loop /sys/class/scsl.host/host9 Class 2, Class 3 00 00 01 20 00 00 00 00 01 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00	
P1000DC-5 - 10:00:00:00:00:00 P1000DC-5 - 10:00:00:00:00 P1000DC-5 - 10:00:00:00:00 P10000DC-5 - 10:00:00:00 P10000DC-5 - 10:00:00:00 P10000DC-5 - 10:00:00 P10000DC-5 - 10:00 P10000DC-5 - 10:00 P1000DC-5 - 10:00	Loop Map	Description	

Figure 12: HBAnyware Utility, Adapter Details Tab

### **Adapter Details Field Definitions**

• Node Symbolic Name - The Fibre Channel name used to register the driver with the name server.



- Hardware Version The JEDEC ID board version of the selected HBA.
- Serial Number The manufacturer assigned serial number of the selected HBA.
- Discovered Ports The number of other HBAs visible to the selected HBA.
- Device ID The HBA's default device ID.

### **Port Attributes Field Definitions**

- Port FC ID The Fibre Channel ID for the port of the selected HBA.
- Port Type The current operational mode of the selected HBA's port.
- OS Device Name The platform-specific name by which the selected HBA is known to the operating system.
- Supported Class of Service A frame delivery scheme exhibiting a set of delivery characteristics and attributes. There are three classes of service.
  - Class-1 provides a dedicated connection between a pair of ports confirmed with delivery or notification of nondelivery.
  - Class-2 provides a frame switched service with confirmed delivery or notification of nondelivery.
  - Class-3 provides a frame switched service similar to Class-2 but without notification of frame delivery or non-delivery.
- Supported FC4 Types a 256-bit (8-word) map of the FC-4 protocol types supported by the port containing the selected HBA.

#### Loop Map Table Definitions

• The loop map shows the different ports present in the loop, and is present only if the port (HBA) is operating in loop mode. The simplest example would be to connect a JBOD directly to an HBA. When this is done, the port type will be a private loop, and the loop map will have an entry for the HBA, and one entry for each of the disks in the JBOD.

# **Viewing Fabric Information**

The Discovery Information area contains information about the selected fabric.

To view the fabric information:

- 1. Start the HBAnyware utility.
- 2. Do one of the following:
  - From the menu bar, click View, then click Sort by Fabric ID.
  - From the toolbar, click the **Sort by Fabric ID**

button.



3. Click on a fabric address in the discovery-tree. The Discovery Information tab shows information about the selected fabric.

3€HBAnyware Utility			- D ×
Elle Yew Adapter Discovery Batch Help			
□■ 罰 查 删 3			
E Fabrics			
😑 🕪 10:00:00:60:69:30:1E:4F	Discovery Information		
B			
E - E LP8000-V2 - 10:00:00:00:09:22:47/92 (CP-10PIP28)	Number of Hosts:	10	
2 - 2 P000 V2 - 10:00:00 (9:22:34:47 (0-10-122))	Number of Fabrics		
8	Number of Patricit.	4	
E	Number of Adapters:	12	
😑 🕪 10.00.00.60.69.90.08.F6	Number of Taxate		
B 5 LP101 - 10:00:00:00:C9:40:F8:87 (CP-OELL2800-1)	Number or Largers.	1	
E - B D400042 • 10:00:00:00:0423:08:05 (0+104925)			
2 - 2 LP9802 - 10:00:00:00:09:134:98:07 (0P-15CSD000)			
E 5 LP9802 - 10:00:00:00:09:42:45:F0 (BILLDELL8200)			
1	,		

Figure 13: HBAnyware Utility, Discovery Information

#### **Discovery Information Field Definitions**

- Number of Hosts The number of hosts discovered or seen by this host on the selected fabric.
- Number of Fabrics The number fabrics identified during discovery.
- Number of Adapters The number of HBAs discovered by this host on the selected fabric.
- Number of Targets The number of storage devices seen by this host on the selected fabric.

#### **Viewing Target Information**

The Target Information area contains information specific to the selected storage device.

To view target information:

- 1. Start the HBAnyware utility.
- 2. Do one of the following:
  - From the menu bar, click View, then click Sort by Host Name.
  - From the toolbar, click the **Sort by Host Name** button.



3. Click a target in the discovery-tree. The Target Information tab appears.

Elle Yiew Adapter Discovery Batch Help	HBAnyware Utility	
Ele         Yiew         Adapter         Discovery         Batch         Help           Image: State of the state of th	HBAnware Utility Target Information -Mapping Information FC ID: SCSI Bus Number: SCSI Target Number: Node WWN: Port WWN: OS Device Name:	115E2 0 0 50:00:60:E8:02:78:6E:03 50:00:60:E8:02:78:6E:03 /sys/class/scsi_host/host10/device/target10:0:0
LUN 10 LUN 11 LUN 12 LUN 12 LUN 13 LUN 14 LUN 15 COMPAQ-DL380C2 COMPAQ-DL380C2 COMPAQ-DL380C2 COMPAQ-DL380C2 COMPAQ-DL380C2 LUN 15 LUN 15		

Figure 14: HBAnyware Utility, Target Information

#### **Target Information Field Definitions**

- Mapping Information Area
  - FC ID The Fibre Channel ID for the target; assigned automatically in the firmware.
  - SCSI Bus Number Defines the SCSI bus to which the target is mapped.
  - SCSI Target Number The target's identifier on the SCSI bus.
  - Node WWN A unique 64-bit number, in hexadecimal, for the target (N\_PORT or NL\_PORT).
  - Port WWN A unique 64-bit number, in hexadecimal, for the fabric (F\_PORT or FL\_PORT).
  - OS Device Name The operating system device name.

### Viewing LUN Information

The LUN Information area contains information about the selected logical unit number (LUN).

To view the LUN information:

- 1. Start the HBAnyware utility.
- 2. Do one of the following:
  - From the menu bar, click View, then click Sort by Host Name.
  - From the toolbar, click the Sort by Host Name 🗾 button.



3. Click on a LUN in the discovery-tree.

File Yiew Adapter Discovery Batch Help	HBAnyware Utilit	y — — — »
<b>医</b> 調		
	· · · ·	
Discovered Elements	LUN Information	
	-Vendor/Product Inform	ation
==== LP1150-F4 - 10:00:00:00:C9:44		
B 50:00:60:EB:02:78:6E:03	Vendor Name:	HITACHI
	Product ID:	OPEN-3
	Devision:	0110
	Kevision.	0110
- UN S	1	
- LUN 6	Mapping Information	11)
	FCP LUN:	00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
	SCSLOS LUN	0
	Scaros core.	* 
- UN 12	OS Device Name:	/dev/sdb
- C LUN 13		
- UN 14	P	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
	LUN Capacity	( )
= a COMPA0-DL380G2		
E		
三	Capacity: 2347 MB	BIOCK SIZE: S 12 Bytes
EPe11002 - 10:00:00:00:C9:35:		
H	J	
P		

Figure 15: HBAnyware Utility, LUN Information

#### **LUN Information Field Definitions**

- Vendor Product Information Area
  - Vendor ID The name of the vendor of the LUN.
  - Product ID The vendor-specific ID for the LUN.
  - Revision The vendor-specific revision number for the LUN.
- Mapping Information Area
  - FCP LUN The Fibre Channel identifier used by the HBA to map to the SCSI OS LUN.
  - SCSI OS LUN The SCSI identifier used by the operating system to map to the specific LUN.
  - OS Device Name The name assigned by the operating system to the selected LUN.
- LUN Capacity

**Note:** LUN capacity information is only provided when the LUN is a mass-storage (disk) device. Other devices like tapes and scanners, etc. do not display capacity.

- Capacity The capacity of the LUN, in megabytes.
- Block Length The length of a logical unit block in bytes.Capacity the capacity of the logical unit, in megabytes.
- Block Length the length of a logical unit block in bytes.

#### **Viewing Port Statistics**

The Statistics tab provides cumulative totals for various error events and statistics on the port. Some statistics are cleared when the HBA is reset.



To view port statistics:

- 1. Start the HBAnyware utility.
- 2. Select Host or Fabric sort.
- 3. Click an HBA in the discovery-tree.
- 4. Click the Statistics tab.

	HBAnvware L	Juliav		
Elle View Adapter Discovery Batch Help				
em 14 m ?				
Discovered Elements	Firmware	Target Mapping	Driver Parameters	Diagnostics
T → □ LP10000 - 10:00:00:00:C9:36:6 -	General	Adapte	r Details	Statistics
H	Tx Frames:	38	Rx Frames:	38
LP11000-M4 - 10:00:00:00:C9:	Tx Words:	10496	Rx Words:	10496
H = 23 COMPAQ-DL380G2	Tx KB Count:	41	Rx KB Count:	41
= 54 CP-DELL2800-1	Tx Sequences:	38	Rx Sequences:	38
E	LIP Count:	0	NOS Count:	Not Available
LPe11002 - 10:00:00:00:C9:35:	Error Frames:	0	Dumped Frames:	Not Available
H D LP101 = 10:00:00:00:C9:40:FB:E	Link Failures:	1	Loss of Sync:	52
======================================	Loss of Signal:	3	Prim Sea Prot Errs:	0
-=	Invalid Tx Words:	104	Invalid CRCs:	0
-=	Ex Count Orig:	3	Ex Count Resp:	3
LP1150-F4 - 10:00:00:00:C9:51	Active XRIs:	0	Active RPIs:	0
宫-鹁-CP-HPDL380-1	Receive P. RSY:		Receive E BSY	°,
	Link Transitions:	1	Prim Sea Timeouts	ő
= 51 SP10000C - 10.00.00.09.4	Electic Buf Champon		Arbitration Timeouts:	ő
F=+BLP11002 - 10:00:00:00:C9:27:7	Elastic bur overruns	· · ·	Arbitration mileouts.	× I
-=				
-== B LP10000DC-S - 10:00:00:00:C9				
L=140000DC-S - 10:00:00:00:C9				
⇒-31 ×L-NEC2000				
B				
	r			

Figure 16: HBAnyware Utility, Statistics Tab

### **Port Statistics Field Definitions**

- Tx Frames Fibre Channel frames transmitted by this HBA port.
- Tx Words Fibre Channel words transmitted by this HBA port.
- Tx KB Count Fibre Channel kilobytes transmitted by this HBA port.
- Tx Sequences Fibre Channel sequences transmitted by this HBA port.
- LIP count The number of loop initialization primitive (LIP) events that have occurred for the port. This field is not supported if the topology is not arbitrated loop. Loop initialization consists of the following:
  - Temporarily suspend loop operations.
  - Determine whether loop capable ports are connected to the loop.
  - Assign AL\_PA IDs.
  - Provide notification of configuration changes and loop failures.
  - Place loop ports in the "monitoring" state.
- Error Frames The number of frames received with cyclic redundancy check (CRC) errors.
- Link Failures The number of times the link failed. A link failure is a possible cause of a timeout.
- Loss of Signal The number of times the signal was lost.
- Invalid Tx Words The total number of invalid words transmitted by this HBA port.



- Ex Count Orig The number of Fibre Channel exchanges originating on this port.
- Active XRIs The number of active exchange resource indicators.
- Received P\_BSY The number of FC port-busy link response frames received.
- Link Transitions The number of times the SLI port sent a link attention condition.
- Elastic Buf Overruns The number of times the link interface has had its elastic buffer overrun.
- Rx Frames The number of Fibre Channel frames received by this HBA port.
- Rx Words The number of Fibre Channel words received by this HBA port.
- Rx KB Count The received kilobyte count by this HBA port.
- Rx Sequences The number of Fibre Channel sequences received by this HBA port.
- NOS count This statistic is currently not supported for the SCSIport Miniport and Storport Miniport drivers, nor is it supported for arbitrated loop.
- Dumped Frames This statistic is not currently supported for the SCSIport Miniport driver, the Storport Miniport driver or the driver for Solaris.
- Loss of Sync The number of times loss of synchronization has occurred.
- Prim Seq Prot Errs The primitive sequence protocol error count. This counter is incremented whenever there is any type of protocol error.
- Invalid CRCs The number of frames received that contain CRC failures.
- Ex Count Resp The number of Fibre Channel exchange responses made by this port.
- Active RPIs The number of remote port indicators.
- Receive F\_BSY The number of Fibre Channel port-busy link response frames received.
- Primitive Seq Timeouts The number of times a primitive sequence event timed out.
- Arbitration Timeouts The number of times the arbitration loop has timed out. Large counts could indicate a malfunction somewhere in the loop or heavy usage of the loop.

### **Viewing Firmware Information**

Use the Firmware tab to view current firmware versions, enable system BIOS and update firmware on remote and local HBAs. The update procedure is on page 81.

To view the firmware information:

- 1. Start the HBAnyware utility.
- 2. Select Host or Fabric sort.
- 3. Select an HBA in the discovery-tree.



4. Select the Firmware tab.

~]	HBAnyware	Utility		
Elle View Adapter Discovery Batch Help				
Discovered Elements	General	Ad	Japter Details	Statistics
He localhost.localdomain	Firmware	Target Mapping	Driver Parameters	Diagnostics
	-Current Firmwore			
L-NIP11000-M4 - 10:00:00:00:09	Corrent rannare			
目標a COMPAO-DL380G2	Current Firmwar	e Version:	2.10A4 (82D2.	10A4)
E-= DIP10000 - 10:00:00:00:C9:42:C	Opporting at Firm	summer blocks	OL 2 Overlage	
目	Operational Firm	ware Name.	SU-2 Overlay	
🗐 -= 🖾 LPe11002 - 10:00:00:00:C9:35:	Initial Firmware:		Initial Load 2.10	384
🖳 🕾 🖾 LPe11002 - 10:00:00:00:C9:35:	CI 1 Cimenana	lama	51.1.0 edu 3	1044
	SU-1 Pittiware	warne.	50-1 Ovenay 2	1044
	SU-2 Firmware	Name:	SLI-2 Overlay 2	.10a4
	Kernel Verriser		1 1194	
	Poet their a character.		1.1144	
Levis up1150-F4 - 10:00:00:00:09:51				
目- 第a CP-HPDL380-1				Update Firmware
T F=				
L== S LP10000DC - 10:00:00:C9:4				
三型 SLES-F80	BOOT BIOS			
==-\$\$\$ LP11002 - 10:00:00:00:C9:27:7				
-== 3 LP11002 - 10:00:00:00:C9:27:7	Boot BIOS Versio	in: D	Disabled	Enable
-=				
L=				
루혈×L-NEC2000				
환····································				
1 WE				
P				

Figure 17: HBAnyware Utility, Firmware Tab

### **Firmware Field Definitions**

#### Firmware Area

- Firmware Version The Emulex firmware version number for this model of HBA.
- Operational Firmware Name If visible, the name of the firmware that is operational.
- Initial Firmware The firmware version stub responsible for installing the SLI code into its proper slot.
- SLI-1 Firmware Name The name of the SLI-1 firmware overlay.
- SLI-2 Firmware Name The name of the SLI-2 firmware overlay.
- Kernel Version The version of the firmware responsible for starting the driver.

#### Firmware Tab Buttons

- Enable/Disable Click to enable or disable the boot code.
- **Update Firmware** Click to this button to display the HBAnyware Firmware Download dialog box. Using the HBAnyware Firmware Download dialog box, browse to the file you wish to download and download the file. See the "Update Firmware Using HBAnyware" topic on page 81 for more information.



# Viewing Target Mapping

The Target Mapping tab in the HBAnyware utility enables you to view current target mapping and to set up persistent binding. You can also set up persistent binding using lputil.

To view target mapping:

- 1. Start the HBAnyware utility.
- 2. Select Host or Fabric sort.
- 3. Select an HBA in the discovery-tree.
- 4. Select the Target Mapping tab.

★ HBAnyware Utility File Vew Adapter Discovery Batch Help		_IO ×
全關 勤 安縣 ?		
<ul> <li></li></ul>	General Adapter Details Statistics Firmware Target Mapping Driver Current Settings Active Bind Type: WWPN Auto-Mapping: Enabled Change Settings	Parameters Diagnostics
	Current Mappings	
	WWPN         WWNN         D_ID         SCSI ID           21:00:00:04:CFS0:C4         20:00:00:4CFS0:C5         20:02:00:01:01:01:01:01:01:01:01:01:01:01:01:	Type Auto Auto Auto Auto Auto Auto Auto C Show WWPN C Show WWNN
	21:00:00:04:CF:50:CF:BF 21:00:00:04:CF:50:D3:71 21:00:00:04:CF:50:D3:      Add Binding Bind New Remove Remove All  Place the cursor over an item in the window above to receive a help description above	C Show D_D

Figure 18: HBAnyware Utility, Target Mapping Tab

#### **Target Mapping Field Definitions**

Current Settings Area

- Active Bind Type -N/A
- Automapping N/A

**Current Mappings Table** 

• This table lists all currently mapped targets for the selected HBA.

Persistent Binding Configuration Table

• This table lists persistent binding information for the selected HBA.

Display Mode Radio Buttons

Show WWPN



- Show WWNN
- Show D\_ID

Target Mapping Buttons

- **Change Settings** Click to change the Bind Type, the mode used to persistently bind target mappings. The Mapped Target Settings window is displayed. Select the Bind Type (WWPN, WWNN, or D\_ID) or set Automapping to Enabled to Disabled.
- Add Binding Click to add a persistent binding.
- Bind New Target Click to add a target that does not appear in the Persistent Binding table.
- **Remove** Click to remove the selected binding.
- **Remove All Bindings** Click to remove all persistent bindings that are currently defined for the selected HBA.

# Viewing HBA Information using the lputil Utility

The LightPulse Diagnostic utility (Iputil) allows you to view information for a selected HBA.

To view HBA information using the lputil utility:

1. Start the Iputil utility. The Main menu opens:

MAIN	IENU
1. List A 2. Adap 3. Firmv 4. Rese 0. Exit	dapters ter Information vare Maintenance t Adapter
Enter ch	noice => 2

Figure 19: Iputil Main Menu

2. Select choice #2.

ADAPTER INFORMATION MENU
<ol> <li>PCI Configuration Parameters</li> <li>Adapter Revision Levels</li> <li>Wakeup Parameters</li> <li>IEEE Address</li> <li>Loop Map</li> <li>Status and Counters</li> <li>Link Status</li> <li>Configuration Parameters</li> </ol>
0. Return to Main Menu
Enter choice =>

Figure 20: Iputil Adapter Menu

If you have multiple HBAs, a list is displayed, you select an HBA and the Adapter Information Menu opens. If you have only one HBA, the Adapter Information Menu opens for that HBA.



- PCI Configuration Parameters Parameters from the PCI configuration space on the HBA. Information includes vendor ID, device ID, base addresses, ROM address, header type, subclass and base class.
- Adapter Revision Levels Firmware revision levels, including kernel and overlay version information.
- Wakeup Parameters BIOS status and version, as well as SLI (service level interface).
- IEEE Address The HBA board address.
- Loop Map If you are using arbitrated loop topology, this option shows information about your connected devices, such as AL\_PA and D\_ID.
- Status and Counters Byte, frame, sequence and busy counts.
- Link Status Tracks activities such as link failure, loss of sync, and elastic overlay.
- Configuration Parameters D\_ID topology, and timeout values for link failures and loss of sync.

# **Resetting HBAs**

You can reset HBAs using either the HBAnyware or lputil utilities.

- The HBAnyware utility allows you to reset remote and local HBAs.
- The lputil utility allows you to reset local HBAs only.

**Caution:** Do not reset an HBA while copying or writing files. This could result in data loss or corruption.

# **Resetting the HBA Using the HBAnyware Utility**

To reset the HBA using the HBAnyware utility:

- 1. Start the HBAnyware utility.
- 2. In the discovery-tree, select the HBA you want to reset.
- 3. Do one of the following:
  - From the menu bar, click Adapter, and then click Reset HBA.
  - Click the Reset HBA 🔛 button.
- 4. The following warning screen appears:

HBAnywa	are Utility 🛛 🛛 🔀
?	Resetting a boot adapter may cause system instability. Emulex assumes no responsibility for the consequences of resetting a boot adapter. Do you want to continue?
	Yes No

Figure 21: HBAnyware Utility, Reset Warning Screen

5. Click **Yes**. The HBA resets.

The reset may require several seconds to complete. While the HBA is resetting, the status bar shows "Reset in progress." When the reset is finished, the status bar shows "Ready".

# **Resetting the HBA Using the Iputil Utility**

The LightPulse Diagnostic utility (Iputil) allows you to reset the HBA.

To reset the HBA using the lputil utility:

- 1. Start the Iputil utility. The Main menu is displayed.
- 2. Choose #4 Reset Adapter.
- 3. If you have multiple HBAs, select the HBA you want to reset.

Resetting the HBA runs self tests and reestablishes links (causes discovery of devices). Once the HBA has been successfully reset, the Main menu is displayed.

# **Updating Firmware**

You can update firmware using either the HBAnyware or lputil utilities.

- The HBAnyware utility allows you to update firmware on remote and local HBAs.
- The lputil utility allows you to update firmware on local HBAs only.

# Updating Firmware Using the HBAnyware Utility

#### Prerequisites

- The Emulex driver for Solaris (including lpfcdfc) is installed properly.
- The HBAnyware utility is installed properly.
- The firmware file has been downloaded from the Emulex Web site and extracted.

**Note:** For OEM branded HBAs, see the OEM's Web site or contact the OEM's customer service department or technical support department for the firmware files.

#### Procedure

To update firmware using the HBAnyware utility:

- 1. Start the HBAnyware utility.
- 2. In the discovery-tree, select the HBA onto which you want to update firmware.



3. Select the Firmware tab.

	HBAnyware	Utility			-
Elle Yiew Adapter Discovery Batch Help					
A Discovered Flaments		r.		- 84	1
is obtained benefits	General		Adapter Det	ans	Statistics
L L==== 10.00.00:00:00:00:00:00	Firmware	Target Mapping	D	river Parameters	s Diagnostics
H	Current Firmware				
L-31 (P11000-N4 - 10:00:00:00:09	concinitiate				
三 第1 COMPAO-DI 380G2	Current Firmwar	e Version:		2.10A4 (82D2.	10A4)
10:00:00:00:09:42:0					
==	Operational Firm	ware Name:		SU-2 Overlay	
Fei1002 - 10:00:00:00:09:35:	Initial Firmware:			Initial Load 2.1	0.84
E-= 2 LPe11002 - 10:00:00:00:C9:35:					
E	SU-1 Firmware	Name:		SLI-1 Overlay 2	.10a4
LP10000 - 10:00:00:00:C9:42:E	SIL-2 Eirmwara	Nama:		SIL-2 Overlag 2	1094
-== 3 LP10000DC - 10:00:00:00:C9:4	SU-2 Pillimater	rearing.		50-2 Overlay 2	
-== 3 LP10000DC = 10:00:00:00:C9:4	Kernel Version:			1.11a4	
-==					
□ = -= -= -= -= 10:00:00:00:C9:51					1
= 對 CP-HPDL380-1					Update Firmware
-=					
■- 鄄_ SLES-F80	BOOT BIOS				
-=-\$\$ LP11002 - 10:00:00:00:C9:27:7					
-=-33 LP11002 - 10:00:00:00:C9:27:7	Boot BIOS Versio	in:	Disabled		Enable
-=					
L== 3 LP10000DC-S - 10:00:00:00:C9					
亭					
■ == S LP9802DC - 10:00:00:00:C9:2E					
#L<=391P9802DC - 10:00:00:00:09:2E					

Figure 22: HBAnyware Utility, Firmware Tab

4. Click **Update Firmware**. The Firmware Download dialog box appears.

	HBAnyware Firmware Download	
Current Firmware		
Host Name:	localhost.localdomain	
Adapter Model:	LP11000-M4	
Current Version:	2.10A4 (B2D2.10A4)	
Firmware Opdate Firmware File:		Browse
	,	
		Start Download
		Start Download
		Start <u>D</u> ownload

Figure 23: HBAnyware Utility, Firmware Download Dialog Box



5. Click **Browse**. The Firmware File Selection dialog box appears.

✓	Firmware F	ile Selection	///////×			
Enter path or folder name:						
/usr/sbin/hba	nyware/RMRe	pository				
Filter		Files				
* Folders	A					
Enter file name	:					
-						
<u>0</u> K	Update	Cancel	Help			

Figure 24: HBAnyware Utility, Firmware File Selection Dialog Box

- 6. Navigate to the extracted firmware file you wish to download. Select the file and click **OK**. A status bar shows the progress of the download and indicates when the download is complete.
- 7. Click Start Download.

If you are updating the firmware on a dual-channel HBA, repeat steps 2 through 7 to update the firmware on the second port or see "Updating Firmware (Batch Mode) Using the HBAnyware Utility" on page 84.



# Updating Firmware (Batch Mode) Using the HBAnyware Utility

Loading firmware in batch mode differs from its non-batch counterpart in that it enables you to install firmware on multiple HBAs in a single step. Batch firmware loading is restricted to a single firmware file and to all accessible HBAs for which that file is compatible.

Note: Stop other HBAnyware utility functions while batch loading is in progress.

#### Prerequisites

• The firmware file has been downloaded from the Emulex Web site and extracted to the Emulex Repository folder (RMRepository). This folder is in /usr/sbin/HBAnyware/RMRepository.

#### Procedure

To batch load firmware using the HBAnyware utility:

- 1. Start the HBAnyware utility.
- 2. From the menu bar, select Batch and click Download Firmware.

**Note:** You do not need to select a particular tree element for this operation.

3. When the Batch Firmware File dialog box appears, browse to locate and select the firmware file to download. Click **Open**.

<b>v</b>	HBAnyware Batch Firmware Download	
Firmware File Selection		
Eirmware File:	/usr/sbin/hbanyware/RMRepository/bd210a9.a	all Browse 22
Supported Models:	LP11000-M4,LP11002-5	<u>.</u>
Select the HBAs to be do 오 아이osdable H 수 오 한 localhost.loca 오 행 LP11000- 오 행 LP11002- 오 행 LP11002- 오 행 LP11002-	wnloaded, then press 'Start Download' to begin di BAS Idomain -M4 - 10:00:00:00:C9:50:B3:88 0 -5 - 10:00:00:00:C9:4C:C0:3E -5 - 10:00:00:00:C9:4C:C0:3F -5 - 10:00:00:00:C9:4C:C1:38 -5 - 10:00:00:00:C9:4C:C1:39	ownloads. Start Download Clear Saye LOJ File Close
Time	Status	1

Figure 25: HBAnyware Utility, Batch Firmware Download Dialog Box

4. A tree-view appears showing all HBAs and their corresponding hosts for which the selected firmware file is compatible.



- Check boxes next to the host and HBA entries are used to select or deselect an entry. Checking an HBA selects or removes that HBA; checking a host removes or selects all eligible HBAs for that host.
- 6. When selection/deselection is complete, click **Start Download**.
- 7. Once downloading begins, the tree-view displays the progress. As firmware for a selected HBA is being downloaded, it appears orange in the tree-view. Once successful downloading is complete, the entry changes to green. If the download failed, the entry is changed to red.

· .	HBAnyware Batch Firmware Download
Firmware File Eirmware File Supported M	Selection e: /usr/sbin/hbanyware/RMRepository/bd210a9.all provide odels: LP11000-M4,LP11002-5
Select the HB.	As to be downloaded, then press 'Start Download' to begin downloads. loadable HBAs alhost.localdomain LP11000-M4 - 10:00:00:00:C9:50:B3:88 -SUN0:4200 LP11002-5 - 10:00:00:00:C9:4C:C0:3E LP11002-5 - 10:00:00:00:C9:4C:C0:3F LP11002-5 - 10:00:00:00:C9:4C:C1:38 LP11002-5 - 10:00:00:00:C9:4C:C1:39 Styre Log File Close
Time 9:35:36 AM	Status Status Stated transfer of download file to host XL-SUNX4200
9:35:36 AM 9:35:36 AM 9:35:41 AM 9:35:41 AM 9:35:42 AM 9:35:42 AM	Starled transfer of download file to host localidomain Completed transfer of download file to host localidomain Completed transfer of download file to host XL-SUNX4200 Bach operation initialization completed Starling download of HBA 10:00:00:00:09:40:C0:3E on host XL-SUNX4200 Starling download of HBA 10:00:00:00:09:50:82:88 on host Iscalhost localifornain

Figure 26: HBAnyware Utility, Firmware Download Dialog Box with Completed Download

- 8. When downloading is complete, you can click **Print Log** to get a hard copy of the activity log.
- 9. Click **Close** to exit the batch procedure.

# Updating Firmware Using the Iputil Utility

The lputil utility enables you to update firmware on a local HBA.

### Prerequisites

- The driver for Solaris (including the Application Helper Module) is installed properly.
- The lputil utility is installed properly.
- The firmware file has been downloaded to a local drive.

**Caution:** If you are using the lputil utility to update firmware on an LP1005DC, you must use lputil version 2.0a3 or later.



### Procedure

Caution: Do not interrupt this process or power down the system until the process is complete.

To update firmware using the lputil utility:

- 1. Start the lputil utility. The Main menu is displayed.
- 2. From the Main menu, enter 3, Firmware Maintenance.
- 3. If prompted, choose the HBA that is being updated.
- 4. Enter 1, Load Firmware Image.
- 5. Enter the full path to the firmware file.
- 6. Enter 0 twice to exit the utility.

If you are updating firmware, the new firmware is transferred to flash ROM.

If you are updating the firmware on a dual-channel HBA, repeat steps 3 through 5 to update the firmware on the second port.

# **Enabling or Disabling the BIOS**

Enabling the BIOS is a two-step process:

- 1. Enable the system BIOS (x86 BootBIOS, FCode or EFIBoot) to read the Emulex boot code on the HBA (using the HBAnyware or lputil utilities).
- 2. Enable the HBA to boot from SAN (using the BIOS utility).

### Enabling or Disabling the BIOS Using the HBAnyware Utility

#### Prerequisites

• The Emulex driver for Solaris is installed properly.

#### Procedure

To enable or disable the HBA BIOS using the HBAnyware utility:

- 1. Start the HBAnyware utility.
- 2. In the discovery-tree, select the HBA whose BIOS you wish to enable/disable.



3. Select the Firmware Tab.

	HBAnywar	e Utility			×
Elle Yiew Adapter Discovery Batch Help					
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·					
Discovered Elements	General	Ad	lapter Details	Statistics	
타운 localhost.localdomain	Firmware	Target Mapping	Driver Parameters	Diagnostic	s
→ S LP10000 - 10:00:00:C9:36:€	Current Linnun				=1
	Current Pirmwa	e			
=-54 COMPAO-D138062	Current Firmwa	are Version:	2.10A4 (82D2.10	(A4)	
T					
]	Operational Fir	mware Name:	SU-2 Overlay		
🗐	Initial Firmware	2	Initial Load 2.10a	4	
🖳 📼 🖾 LPe11002 - 10:00:00:00:C9:35:	St. 1 Simmuna	Mana	51.1 Octor 3.1	0.4	
E	SU-1 Pittiware	e rvame.	50-1 Ovenay 2.1	va-	
	SU-2 Firmware	e Name:	SU-2 Overlay 2.1	0a4	
	Kernel Verrise		1 1194		
SUB21150 - 10:00:00:00:00:09:48:51	Portier Version		1.1144		
- R-3 (P1150-F4 - 10:00:00:00:09:51					-
= 주요 CP-HPDL380-1			1	Jodate Firmware	
F=					
					=
事勤2LES-F80	-BOOL BIO2				
-=-{S LP11002 - 10:00:00:00:C9:27:7					
-=-{ <b>3</b> LP11002 - 10:00:00:00:C9:27:7	Boot BIOS Vers	ion: D	isabled	Enable	
□ □ □ □ □ 000000C-5 - 10:00:00:00:09					
H-set XL-NEC2000					
H					
	1				

Figure 27: HBAnyware Utility, Firmware Tab with BIOS Disabled

- 4. To enable the BIOS, click **Enable**. The button title changes from **Enable** to **Disable**.
  - Or

To disable the BIOS, click **Disable**. The button title changes from **Disable** to **Enable**.

If you are updating x86 BootBIOS, you must also enable the HBA to boot from SAN using the BIOS utility; see the documentation that accompanies the boot code for more information.

#### Enabling or Disabling the BIOS Using the Iputil Utility

#### Prerequisites

- The Emulex driver for Solaris is installed properly.
- The x86 BootBIOS file is properly installed.

#### Procedure

To enable or disable the HBA BIOS using the lputil utility:

- 1. Start the lputil utility. The Main menu is displayed.
- 2. From the Main menu, enter 3, Firmware Maintenance.
- 3. If prompted, choose the HBA that is being updated.



- 4. From the Firmware Maintenance menu, press 6, Boot BIOS Maintenance.
  - If the BIOS is currently disabled, press 1, Enable Boot BIOS, to enable the BIOS.
  - If the BIOS is already enabled, press 1, Disable Boot BIOS, to disable the BIOS.
  - If the BIOS is not currently loaded, the following message is displayed: There is no Boot BIOS found on adapter
- 5. Enter 0 twice to exit.
- 6. If you are updating x86 BootBIOS, you must also enable the HBA to boot from SAN using the BIOS utility; see the documentation that accompanies the boot code for more information.



# **Configuring the Driver**

You can configure the driver using the HBAnyware utility or the lpfc.conf file.

**Note:** The HBAnyware utility enables you to make dynamic parameter changes with any version of Solaris. However, changes made by editing the lpfc.conf file and issuing an update\_drv command are only dynamic for Solaris 9 and later.

# Setting Driver Parameters Using the HBAnyware Utility

The Driver Parameters tab and Host Driver Parameter tab enable you to modify driver parameters for a specific HBA or all HBAs in a host.

For example, if you select a host in the discovery-tree, you can globally change the parameters for all HBAs in that host. If you select an HBA in the discovery-tree, you can change the lpfc\_use\_adisc, lpfc\_log\_verbose and the lpfc\_nodev\_tmo parameters for only that HBA.

For each parameter, the Driver Parameters tab and Host Driver Parameters tab shows the current value, the range of acceptable values, the default value, and whether the parameter is dynamic (a dynamic parameter allows the change to take effect without restarting the HBA or rebooting the system). You can make parameter changes persistent after a reboot of the system. You can also restore parameters to their default settings.

You can also apply driver parameters for one HBA to other HBAs in the system using the Driver Parameters tab. When you define parameters for an HBA, you create a .dpv file. The .dpv file contains the parameters for that HBA. After you create the .dpv file, the HBAnyware utility enables you to apply the .dpv file parameters to multiple HBAs in the system, thereby simplifying multiple HBA configuration. See "Creating the Batch Mode Driver Parameters File" on page 92 for more information.

# Setting Driver Parameters for an HBA

To change the driver parameters for an HBA:

- 1. Start the HBAnyware utility.
- 2. Do one of the following:
  - From the menu bar, click **View**, then click **Sort by Host Name**.
  - From the toolbar, click the Sort by Host Name 🗐 button.
- 3. In the discovery-tree, select the HBA whose parameters you wish to change.



4. Select the Driver Parameters tab (see Figure 28). The parameter values for the selected HBA are displayed.



Figure 28: HBAnyware Utility, HBA Selected - Driver Parameters Tab

- 5. In the Driver Parameters tab, click the parameter that you want to change. A description of the parameter appears on the right side of the dialog box.
- 6. Enter a new value in the Value field in the same hexadecimal or decimal format as the current value. If the current value is in hexadecimal format, it is prefaced by "0x" (for example, 0x2d). You may enter a new hexadecimal value without the "0x". For example, if you enter ff10, this value is intepreted and displayed as "0xff10".
- 7. If you want the change to be temporary (causing the parameter to revert to its last permanent setting when the system is rebooted), check the "Make change temporary" box. This option is available only for dynamic parameters.
- If you are making changes to multiple parameters, and you want all the changes to be temporary, check the "Make all changes temporary" box. This setting overrides the setting of the "Make change temporary" box. Only dynamic parameters can be made temporary.
- 9. Click Apply.

#### **Restoring All Parameters to Their Earlier Values**

If you changed parameters, but did not click **Apply** and you want to restore the parameters to their last saved values, click **Restore**.

#### **Resetting All Default Values**

If you want to reset all parameter values to their default (factory) values, click Defaults.



### **Setting Driver Parameters for a Host**

To change the driver parameters for HBAs installed in a host:

- 1. Start the HBAnyware utility.
- 2. Do one of the following:
  - From the menu bar, click View, then click Sort by Host Name.
  - From the toolbar, click the Sort by Host Name 📰 button.
- 3. In the discovery-tree, click the host whose HBA driver parameters you wish to change.
- 4. Click the Host Driver Parameters tab. If there are HBAs with different driver types installed, the installed Driver Types menu shows a list of all driver types and driver versions that are installed on the HBAs in the host. Select the driver whose parameters you wish to change. This menu does not appear if all the HBAs are using the same driver.
- 5. In the Host Driver Parameters tab, click the parameter that you want to change. A description of the parameter appears on the right side of the dialog box.



Figure 29: HBAnyware Utility, Host Selected - Driver Parameters Tab

- Enter a new value in the Value field. You must enter values in decimal or hexadecimal format, depending on how the current value is presented. If the value is in hexadecimal format, it is prefaced by "0x" (for example 0x2d).
- 7. If you want the change to be temporary (causing the parameter to revert to its last permanent setting when the system is rebooted), check the "Make change temporary" box. This option is available only for dynamic parameters.
- If you are making changes to multiple parameters, and you want all the changes to be temporary, check the "Make all changes temporary" box. This setting overrides the setting of the "Make change temporary" box. Only dynamic parameters can be made temporary.
- 9. Click Apply.



#### **Restoring All Parameters to Their Earlier Values**

If you changed parameters, but not click **Apply** and you want to restore the parameters to their last saved values, click **Restore**.

#### **Resetting All Default Values**

If you want to reset all parameter values to their default (factory) values, click Defaults.

#### **Creating the Batch Mode Driver Parameters File**

You can apply driver parameters for one HBA to other HBAs in the system using the Driver Parameters tab. When you define parameters for an HBA, you create a .dpv file. The .dpv file contains the parameters for that HBA. After you create the .dpv file, the HBAnyware utility enables you to apply the .dpv file parameters to multiple HBAs in the system, thereby simplifying multiple HBA configuration.

To create the .dpv file:

- 1. Start the HBAnyware utility.
- 2. Select the HBA whose parameters you want to apply to other HBAs from the discovery-tree.
- 3. Select the Driver Parameters tab. Set driver parameters (see Figure 28 on page 90).
- 4. After you define the parameters for the selected HBA, click **Save Settings**. The Select Driver Parameter File dialog box appears. Use the dialog box to select where to save the file or to rename the file. Click **Save**. The Save Driver Parameters dialog box appears.

Save Save	Driver Parameters
Saved Parameter File Selection	tory/lpfc.linux.8x=8.0.16.25.dpv] Browse
Saved Parameters ack0=Disabled cr-count=1 cr-delay=0 discovery-threads=32 fcp-bind-method=2 fcp-class=3	Save All Parameters
	Sav <u>e</u> <u>C</u> ancel

Figure 30: HBAnyware Utility, Save Driver Parameters Dialog Box

- 5. The two radio buttons allow you to choose the type of parameters to save. You can save all parameters or only those parameters whose current values differ from their corresponding default values.
- 6. A list of the saved parameters and their current values show in the Saved Parameters box.
- 7. Click Save.

#### Assigning Batch Mode Parameters to HBAs

After you create the batch mode parameters (.dpv) file, you can assign its parameters to multiple HBAs. Assigning batch mode parameters make it easy to configure multiple HBAs. See "Creating the Batch Mode Driver Parameters File" on page 92 to learn how to create the .dpv file.

To assign batch mode parameters to HBAs:

1. Start the HBAnyware utility.



- 2. From the HBAnyware utility menu, click **Batch** and select Update Driver Parameters. (You do not need to select any discovery-tree elements at this time.) The Select Driver Parameter File dialog box appears.
- 3. Select the file whose parameters you wish to apply and click **Open**. The Batch Driver Parameter Update dialog box shows all the batch file compatible HBAs with a check mark beside them.

<b>v</b>	HBAnyware Batch Driver Parameter Update	
Driver Parameter File Selection         Driver Parameter File:         Supported Driver Type:         Select the hosts or HBAs to receive	hbanyware/RMRepository/lpfc.linux.8x-8.0.16.25.dpv	rowse
Time	Status	

Figure 31: HBAnyware Utility, Batch Driver Parameters Update Dialog Box

4. Click Start Updates. The HBAnyware utility Batch Driver Update dialog box shows the current status of the update. When the update completes, a final summary shows the number of HBAs that were successfully processed, and the number of HBAs for which one or more parameter updates failed.

If you wish, click **Print Log** to print a report of the update.

# Configuring Driver Parameters Using lpfc.conf

#### Using lpfc.conf for Solaris 9 and 10

Typically, the lpfc driver reads the configuration parameters from lpfc.conf during driver startup. Once the configuration parameters are read, the lpfc driver does not re-read the driver parameters. This feature is native to the Solaris operating system. However on Solaris releases 9 or later, you can force the lpfc driver to re-read the lpfc.conf configuration file using the update\_drv system command.

```
Note: The update_drv command does not change the parameters for the lpfc instances that are already active in the system. The changes will be applicable to any new lpfc instances that are attached afterwards. Changes made by editing the lpfc.conf file and issuing an update_drv command are only dynamic for Solaris 9 and later.
```



To modify the configuration parameters:

- 1. Login as root or su to root.
- 2. Edit the configuration parameters in the file /kernel/drv/lpfc.conf. To view a table of all lpfc.conf parameters, see "The Configuration File (lpfc.conf)" on page 95.
- 3. Run update\_drv –f lpfc to force the Solaris system to re-read lpfc.conf.

To modify parameters for an adapter instance that is already active:

- 1. Login as root or su to root.
- 2. Run cfgadm and note down the <Ap\_Id> corresponding to the lpfc instance.
- 3. Unconfigure the lpfc driver instance corresponding to <Ap\_ld>.
- 4. Edit the adapter-specific parameters in the file /kernel/drv/lpfc.conf.
- 5. Run update\_drv -f lpfc to force the Solaris system to re-read lpfc.conf.
- 6. Run cfgadm and configure the adapter instance back.

To modify parameters for an adapter that is yet to be added:

- 1. Login as root or su to root.
- 2. Run cfgadm and configure the new adapter instance. Write down the adapter instance. The adapter instance is printed in the driver sign-on messages.
- 3. Run cfgadm and unconfigure the new adapter instance.
- 4. Edit the adapter-specific parameters in the file /kernel/drv/lpfc.conf.
- 5. Run update\_drv –f lpfc to force the Solaris system to re-read lpfc.conf.
- 6. Run cfgadm and configure the new adapter instance.

#### **Updating Parameters for Solaris 8**

To change parameters or bindings in Solaris 8:

- 1. Quiesce all I/O on the device.
- 2. Unconfigure all ports with open instances to the driver.
- 3. Edit the adapter-specific parameters in the file /kernel/drv/lpfc.conf.
- 4. Unload the driver using the modunload command. (See "Loading or Unloading the Driver Without Rebooting" on page 61.)
- 5. Reload the driver using the modload command. (See"Loading or Unloading the Driver Without Rebooting" on page 61.)

### **Understanding Device Numbering**

When you configure the driver, there are various configuration parameters that rely upon device numbers. This section will explain the two different levels of device numbering and how they apply to specific configuration parameters.

The first level of device numbering is the driver instance number. This is the number that is displayed in log messages to syslog or the console, for example, lpfcX. The lpfc.conf configuration parameters that use lpfcXtY rely on X to be the driver instance number and Y to be the FCP target number. This format is used for configuring LUN throttles and persistent binding. In systems where adapters are moved around or changed, it is possible for the driver instance number to exceed the number of adapters.



The second level of numbering is the SCSI controller number. This number is assigned by the system for each SCSI target driver it detects. It is typically in the special files created to access each SCSI device, for example /dev/dsk/cXt0d0s2. Once these numbers are assigned, they will stay the same between reboots if there are no HBA changes to the system.

# The Configuration File (lpfc.conf)

**Note:** The fcp-bind-WWNN, fcp-bind-WWPN and fcp-bind-DID parameters do not apply to a specific HBA. They are the global parameters. These parameters specify a list of persistent bindings. Each entry in this list applies to a specific instance of an HBA. You can only use one type of binding per adapter.

The lpfc.conf file contains all the parameters that control driver initialization.

In the lpfc.conf file, all adapter-specific parameters have lpfcX-prefix (where X is the driver instance number); e.g., setting lpfc0-lun-queue-depth= 20 makes 20 the default number of maximum commands which can be sent to a single logical unit (disk).

Changes to the lpfc.conf file require you to unload and reload the driver.

Note: If you want to override a driver parameter for a single driver-loading session, you can specify it as a parameter to the modload command. For example: # modload /kernel/drv/lpfc automap=0 (for 32-bit platforms) or modload /kernel/drv/sparcv9/lpfc automap=0 (for 64-bit platforms) . This will load Emulex's SCSI support driver with automap set to 0 for this session.

#### Table 3: Ipfc.conf Parameters

Parameter	Scope	Default	Min	Max	Dynamic	Comments
ack0	Controller Specific	0	0=Off	1=On	No	Use ACK0 for class 2. If ack0 is 1, the adapter will try to use ACK0 when running Class 2 traffic to a device. If the device doesn't support ACK0, then the adapter will use ACK1. If ack0 is 0, only ACK1 will be used when running Class2 traffic.



# Table 3: lpfc.conf Parameters (Continued)

Parameter	Scope	Default	Min	Max	Dynamic	Comments
automap	Controller Specific	1	0=Off	1=On	No	Automatically assign SCSI IDs to FCP targets detected. If automap is 1, SCSI IDs for all FCP nodes without persistent bindings will be automatically generated based on the bind method of the corresponding HBA port. If FCP devices are added to or removed from the Fibre Channel network when the system is down, there is no guarantee that these SCSI IDs will remain the same when the system is booted again. If automap is 0, only devices with persistent bindings will be recognized by the system.
cr-count	Controller Specific	1	1	255	No	This value specifies a count of I/O completions after which an interrupt response is generated. This feature is disabled if cr-delay is set to 0.
cr-delay	Controller Specific	0	0	63	No	This value specifies a count of milliseconds after which an interrupt response generated if cr-count has not been satisfied. This value is set to 0 to disable the Coalesce Response feature as default.
delay-rsp-err	Controller Specific	0	0=Off	1=On	Yes	(Boolean) The driver will delay FCP RSP errors being returned to the upper SCSI layer based on the no-device- delay configuration parameter.
discovery-threads	Controller Specific	1	1	32	No	Number of ELS commands during discovery. This value specifies the number of threads permissible during device discovery. A value of 1 serializes the discovery process.



Table 3: I	pfc.conf Parameters	(Continued)	)
------------	---------------------	-------------	---

Parameter	Scope	Default	Min	Max	Dynamic	Comments
dqfull-throttle-up- inc	Controller Specific	1	0	128	Yes	Amount to increment LUN queue depth each time. This parameter causes the lpfc driver to decrement a LUN's queue depth, if a queue full condition is received from the target. The queue depth will be decremented down to a minimum of 1. The variables dqfull-throttle-up-inc and dqfull-throttle-up-time are used to restore the queue depth back to the original. The dqfull-throttle-up-time parameter defines a time, in seconds, that is used to tell when to increase the current queue depth. If the current queue depth lisn't equal to the lun-queue-depth, and the driver stop_send_io flag is equal to 0 for that device, increment the current queue depth by dqfull- throttle-up-inc (don't exceed the lun-queue-depth). So, if both parameters are set to 1, then driver increments the current queue depth once per second until it hits the lun- queue-depth. The only other way to restore the queue depth (besides rebooting), back to the original LUN throttle, is by running the command /usr/sbin/lpfc/resetqdepth X. This will restore the LUN throttle of all LUNs for adapter X back to the original value.



# Table 3: lpfc.conf Parameters (Continued)

Parameter	Scope	Default	Min	Мах	Dynamic	Comments
dqfull-throttle-up- time	Controller Specific		0	30	Yes	Time interval (seconds) to increment LUN queue depth. Amount to increment LUN queue depth each time. This parameter causes the lpfc driver to decrement a LUN's queue depth, if a queue full condition is received from the target. The queue depth will be decremented down to a minimum of 1. The variables dqfull-throttle-up-inc and dqfull-throttle-up-time are used to restore the queue depth back to the original. The dqfull-throttle-up-time parameter defines a time, in seconds, that is used to tell when to increase the current queue depth. If the current queue depth isn't equal to the lun-queue-depth, and the driver stop_send_io flag is equal to 0 for that device, increment the current queue depth by dqfull- throttle-up-inc (don't exceed the lun-queue-depth). So, if both parameters are set to 1, then driver increments the current queue depth once per second until it hits the lun- queue-depth. The only other way to restore the queue depth (besides rebooting), back to the original LUN throttle, is by running the command /usr/sbin/lpfc/resetqdepth X. This will restore the LUN throttle of all LUNs for adapter X back to the original value.
extra-ıo-tmo	Controller Specific	0	0	255	Yes	Extra timeout value, in seconds, to be applied to each FCP command sent. When connecting through a large fabric, certain devices may require a longer timeout value.



Parameter	Scope	Default	Min	Max	Dynamic	Comments
fcp-bind-DID	Global	Inactive	N/A	N/A	No	Setup persistent FCP bindings based on a target device's Port ID. This binding guarantees that target assignments will be preserved between reboots. The format for a bind entry is "NNNNNN:lpfcXtY" where NNNNNN is a 6 digit representation of the targets Port ID, X is the driver instance number and Y is the target assignment. Multiple entries must be separated by a comma (,) with the last entry terminated with a semi-colon (;). Target assignments, with all supported LUNs must also be configured in sd.conf, st.conf, or cmdk.conf. A sample entry follows: fcp-bind- DID="0000ef:lpfc0t0"; (all on one line.)
fcp-bind-method	Controller Specific	2	1	4	Νο	Specifies the method of binding to be used. This binding method is used for persistent binding and automapped binding. A value of 1 will force WWNN binding, value of 2 will force WWPN binding and value of 3 will force DID binding. A fcp-bind- method value of 4 will cause target ID assignment in a private loop environment to be based on the ALPA array (hard addressed). If a binding method is not specified for a port, WWPN binding will be used. Any persistent binding whose method does not match with the bind method of the port will be ignored. A sample entry follows: lpfc0-fcp-bind-method=1; lpfc1-fcp-bind-method=2;



Table 3:	Ipfc.conf Parameters	s (Continued)
----------	----------------------	---------------

Parameter	Scope	Default	Min	Max	Dynamic	Comments
fcp-bind-WWNN	Global	Inactive	N/A	N/A	No	Setup persistent FCP bindings based on a target device's WWNN. This binding guarantees that target assignments will be preserved between reboots. The format for a bind entry is "NNNNNNNNNNNNNNNNNNN!pf cXtY" where NNNNNNNNNNNNNNNNNN is a 16 digit representation of the targets WorldWide Node Name, X is the driver instance number and Y is the target assignment. Multiple entries must be separated by a comma (,) with the last entry terminated with a semi-colon (;). Target assignments, with all supported LUNs must also be configured in sd.conf, st.conf, or cmdk.conf. A sample entry follows: fcp-bind- WWNN="20000020370c396f:1 pfc1t0", "20000020370c27f7:1pfc0t2";
fcp-bind-WWPN	Global	Inactive	N/A	N/A	Νο	Setup persistent FCP bindings based on a target device's WWPN. This binding guarantees that target assignments will be preserved between reboots. The format for a bind entry is "NNNNNNNNNNNNNNNNNNN!pf cXtY" where NNNNNNNNNNNNNNNNNN is a 16 digit representation of the targets WorldWide Port Name, X is the driver instance number and Y is the target assignment. Multiple entries must be separated by a comma (,) with the last entry terminated with a semi-colon (;). Target assignments, with all supported LUNs must also be configured in sd.conf, st.conf, or cmdk.conf. A sample entry follows: fcp-bind- WWPN="21000020370cf8263 :lpfc1t0";



# Table 3: lpfc.conf Parameters (Continued)

Parameter	Scope	Default	Min	Max	Dynamic	Comments
fcp-class	Controller Specific	3	2	3	Yes	The lpfc driver is capable of transmitting FCP data in Class2 or Class 3. The lpfc driver defaults to using Class 3 transmission.
fdmi-on	Global	0	0	2	No	This parameter controls the fdmi capability of the lpfc driver. If set to 0 (default), fdmi is disabled. A value of 1 enables fdmi without registration of "host name" port attribute, while a value of 2 enables fdmi with registration of "host name" port attribute.
ip-class	Controller Specific	3	2	2	Yes	Fibre Channel is capable of transmitting IP data in Class2 or Class 3. The lpfc driver defaults to using Class 3 transmission.
link-speed	Controller Specific	0	0=auto se 1=1G 2=2G 4=4G	elect	No	Sets link speed.
linkdown-tmo	Controller Specific	30	0	255	Yes	This variable controls how long the driver will hold I/O (0 - 255 seconds) after the link becomes inaccessible. When this timer expires, all I/O waiting to be serviced is aborted. For instance, FCP commands will be returned back to the target driver with a failure. The lower the value, the quicker the driver will fail commands back to the upper levels. There is a tradeoff here: small values risk retrying the commands when the link is bouncing; large values risk delaying the failover in a fault tolerant environment. linkdown-tmo works in conjunction with nodev-tmo. I/O will fail when either of the two timers expires.


## Table 3: lpfc.conf Parameters (Continued)

Parameter	Scope	Default	Min	Max	Dynamic	Comments
log-only	Controller Specific	1	0	1	Yes	When set to 1, log messages are only logged to syslog. When set to 0, log messages are also printed on the console.
log-verbose	Controller Specific	0x0	0x0	Oxffff	Yes	(bit mask) When set to non- zero this variable causes lpfc to generate additional messages concerning the state of the driver and the I/O operations it carries out. These messages may go to the system log file, /var/adm/messages and/or the system console. See Error Messages for detailed information on the bit mask.
lpfcNtM-lun- throttle	Controller Specific	none	1	128	No	The maximum number of outstanding commands to permit for any logical unit on a specific target. This value overrides lun-queue-depth.
lpfcNtM-tgt-throttle	Controller Specific	none	1	10240	No	The maximum number of outstanding commands to permit for any target, including all LUNs on that target. This value overrides tgt-queue-depth.
lun-queue-depth	Global	30	1	128	No	The driver uses this value as the default limit for the number of simultaneous commands to issue to a single logical unit on a single target on the loop. A single logical unit will never be sent more commands than allowed by lun-queue-depth; however, less may be sent when sd-max-throttle or tgt-queue-depth is reached for the entire target.
msi-mode	Controller Specific	2	0	2	No	Enables or disables MSI.



## Table 3: lpfc.conf Parameters (Continued)

Parameter	Scope	Default	Min	Max	Dynamic	Comments
network-on	Controller Specific	0	0	1	No	This variable controls whether lpfc provides IP networking functionality over Fibre Channel. This variable is a Boolean: when zero, IP networking is disabled; when non-zero, IP networking is enabled.
no-device-delay	Global	1	0	30	Yes	This variable (0 to 30 seconds) determines the length of the interval between deciding to fail an I/O because there is no way to communicate with its particular device (e.g., due to device failure or device removal) and actually failing the command. A value of zero implies no delay whatsoever. This delay is specified in seconds. A minimum value of 1 (1 second) is recommended when communicating with any Tachyon based device.
nodev-holdio	Controller Specific	0	0=Off	1=On	Yes	This variable controls if I/O errors are held by the driver if a FCP device on the SAN disappears. If set, I/O errors will be held until the device returns back to the SAN (potentially indefinitely). This parameter is ignored, if SCSI commands are issued in polled mode. The upper layer may retry the command once theerror is returned.
nodev-tmo	Controller Specific	30	0	255	Yes	This variable (0 to 255 seconds) controls how long I/ O will be held by the driver if a device on the SAN disappears. If set, I/O will be held for the specified number of seconds. If the device does not appear on the SAN before nodev-tmo seconds, then the driver will fail all held I/O and mark the device as unavailable. The upper layer may retry the command once the error is returned.



Parameter	Scope	Default	Min	Max	Dynamic	Comments
num-bufs	Controller Specific	128	64	4096	No	This variable specifies the number of command buffers to allocate. These buffers are used for Fibre Channel Extended Link Services (ELS), and one for each FCP command issued in SLI-2 mode. If you want to queue lots of FCP commands to the adapter, then you should increase num-bufs for better performance. These buffers consume physical memory and are also used by the device driver to process loop initialization and re- discovery activities. <b>Important:</b> The driver must always be configured with at least several dozen ELS command buffers; we recommend at least 128.
num-iocbs	Controller Specific	256	128	10240	No	This variable indicates the number of Input/Output control block (IOCB) buffers to allocate. IOCBs are internal data structures used to send and receive I/O requests to and from the LightPulse hardware. Too few IOCBs can temporarily prevent the driver from communicating with the adapter, thus lowering performance. (This condition is not fatal.) If you run heavy IP traffic, you should increase num-iocbs for better performance.
post-ip-buf	Controller Specific	128	64	1024	No	This variable specifies the number of 4K STREAMS buffers to allocate and post to the fibre channel IP ring. Increase this setting for better IP performance under heavy loading.



## Table 3: lpfc.conf Parameters (Continued)

Parameter	Scope	Default	Min	Max	Dynamic	Comments
scan-down	Controller Specific	1	0=Off	1=On	Yes	There are two scanning algorithms used to discover a node in a private loop. If scan- down is 1, devices on the private loop are scanned starting from ALPA 0x01 through ALPA 0xEF. If scan- down is 0, devices on the private loop are scanned starting from ALPA 0xEF through ALPA 0x01. Scan- down values 0 and 1 do not apply if a loop map is obtained. See the FC-AL profile for the definition of a loop map.
tgt-queue-depth	Global	0	0	10240	No	The driver uses this value as the default limit for the number of simultaneous commands to issue to a singletarget on the loop. A value of 0 causes no target throttling to occur. A single target will never be sent more commands than allowed by tgt-queue-depth; however, less may be sent when sd- max-throttle is reached for the entire target.
topology	Controller Specific	0x0	0x0=loop P2P 0x2=P2P 0x4=loop 0x6=P2P loop	o , then o only o only then	No	This variable controls the Fibre Channel topology expected by lpfc at boot time. Fibre Channel offers point-to-point, fabric, and arbitrated loop topologies. To make the adapter operate as an N_Port, select point-to- point mode (used for N_Port to F_Port, and N_Port to N_Port connections). To make the adapter operate in a Fibre Channel loop as an NL_Port, select loop mode (used for private loop and public loop topologies). The driver will reject an attempt to set the topology to a value not in the above list. The auto-topology settings 0 and 6 will not work unless the adapter is using firmware version 3.20 or higher.



#### Table 3: Ipfc.conf Parameters (Continued)

Parameter	Scope	Default	Min	Max	Dynamic	Comments
use-adisc	Controller Specific	0	0=Off	1=On	Yes	This variable controls the ELS command used for address authentication during re- discovery upon link-up. If set, ADISC is used, otherwise, PLOGI is used. For FCP-2 devices, the driver will always use ADISC. For re-discovery due to a RSCN, the driver will always use ADISC.
xmt-que-size	Controller Specific	256	128	10,240	No	This variable specifies the number of network packets that can be queued or outstanding at any time in the driver. Increase this setting for better IP performance under heavy loading.

## Probing for FCP Disk Targets -- Configuring sd.conf

You must tell the Solaris target drivers which disks to probe for at boot time. These instructions are contained in a configuration file specific to the target driver. The disk target driver is called sd for Solaris 7, Solaris 8, Solaris 9 and Solaris 10. The configuration file, sd.conf, is usually found in /kernel/drv. See the driver.conf(4) man page for additional details.

Each disk drive on the Fibre Channel must have an entry in sd.conf. You may have to define additional targets and LUNs in these files. For FCP there can be up to 512 targets, with a maximum of 256 logical unit numbers (LUN) per target.

Initially, the sd.conf file has entries with the format:

```
name="sd" parent="lpfc" class="scsi" target=0 lun=0
```

The class keyword ensures that Solaris specifically probes all adapters controlled by all drivers that register themselves as class="scsi", for the specified targets and LUNs. The lpfc driver registers itself as class="scsi".

The installation procedure for lpfc that is automatically added to sd.conf follows this format:

```
#name="sd" parent="lpfc" target=16 lun=0;
#name="sd" parent="lpfc" target=17 lun=0;
#name="sd" parent="lpfc" target=17 lun=1;
#name="sd" parent="lpfc" target=17 lun=2;
#name="sd" parent="lpfc" target=17 lun=3;
```

If you want to use disks (for example, RAID arrays) with non-zero LUNs, or with more than 18 targets, simply add lines to the target driver configuration file specifying the desired target ID and LUN(s). For instance, you can include the following example in your target driver configuration file:

```
name="sd" parent="lpfc" target=17 lun=0;
name="sd" parent="lpfc" target=17 lun=1;
```



or

or

```
name="sd" class="scsi" target=17 lun=0;
name="sd" class="scsi" target=17 lun=1;
```

The parent keyword ensures that Solaris specifically probes all adapters controlled by the lpfc driver for the specified targets and LUNs.

**Note:** Target probing changes in sd.conf will take effect only after the system has been rebooted.

# Probing for FCP Tape Targets -- Configuring st.conf

You must tell the Solaris target drivers which tapes to probe for at boot time. These instructions are contained in a configuration file specific to the target driver. The configuration file, st.conf, is usually found in /kernel/drv. See the driver.conf(4) man page for additional details. The disk target driver is called st, and entries must be included in this file in order to run tape devices.

No entries are automatically added to the st.conf file. You can include the following example in your target driver configuration file:

```
name="st" parent="lpfc" target=17 lun=0;
name="st" parent="lpfc" target=17 lun=1;
name="st" class="scsi" target=17 lun=0;
name="st" class="scsi" target=17 lun=1;
```

The parent keyword ensures that Solaris specifically probes all adapters controlled by the lpfc driver for the specified targets and LUNs.

**Note:** Target probing changes in st.conf will take effect only after the system has been rebooted.

Along with configuring the target and LUNs, the tape-config-list section of the st.conf file must be configured for Solaris to correctly communicate with the tape drives. Contact your tape vendor for assistance.



# **Setting Up Persistent Binding**

You can create persistent binding using the HBAnyware or lputil utilities.

## Setting Up Persistent Binding Using the HBAnyware Utility

When you create a persistent binding, the HBAnyware utility tries to make that binding dynamic. However, the binding must meet all of the following criteria to be dynamic:

- The SCSI ID (target/bus combination) specified in the binding request must not be mapped to another target. For example, the SCSI ID must not already appear in the 'Current Mappings' table under 'SCSI ID'. If the SCSI ID is already in use, then the binding cannot be made dynamic, and a reboot is required.
- The target (WWPN, WWNN or DID) specified in the binding request must not be mapped to a SCSI ID. If the desired target is already mapped, then a reboot is required.
- The 'Bind Type Selection' (WWPN, WWNN or DID) specified in the binding request must match the currently active bind type shown under "Current Settings" section of the Target Mapping tab. If they do not match, then the binding cannot be made active.

To set up persistent binding using the HBAnyware utility:

- 1. Start the HBAnyware utility.
- 2. In the directory tree, click the HBA for which you want to set up persistent binding.
- 3. Click the Target Mapping tab. All targets are displayed.

age monso ⊇ 20 wtb.0035P1-TEST ⊕= 100 UP101 - 10:00:00:00:C9:3F:2F:CD	General   Adapter Details   Current Settings Active Bind Type: V Auto-Mapping: E	Statistics   Firmware   Ta AwPN nabled	rget Mapp Cha	nge Settin	er Parameters   Diag Refresh
	Current Mappings				
	hite Chi	1.4.40	0.00	0001-10	Track 1
	21.00.00.01.05.FD-04	20.00.00.04.05.50.04	2026.0	0.0	Type 4
	21:00:00:04:05:50:05:36	20.00.00.04 CF 50 CK	20200	(1,0)	Auto
	21:00:00:04 CE 50:CE 34	201000004 CE 50 CE 34	20256	0.5	Auto
	21:00:00:04 CE 50:CE 8E	20 00 00 04 CE 50 CE BE	202E0	(1.2)	Auto
	21:00:00:04 CF:50:03:71	20:00:00:04 CF:50:03:71	202E1	(1.3)	Auto
	21:00:00:04:CF:50:D3	20:00:00:04:CF:50:D3	202E2	(1,4)	Auto
	Persistent Binding Configurati Target WWPN 21:00:00:4 CF 50: C5: 36 21:00:00:4 CF 50: C5: 36 21:00:00:4 CF 50: C5: 36 21:00:00:4 CF 50: C5: 37 21:00:00:4 CF 50: D3: 71 21:00:00:4 CF 50: 71 21:00	on SCSI ID I New Remove	Re	emove Al	C Show WWPN

Figure 32: HBAnyware Utility, Target Mapping Tab

4. The information for each currently defined mapping includes the world wide port name (WWPN), world wide node name (WWNN), device ID (D\_ID), SCSI ID, or Bind Type. The type can be either 'PB', indicating that the mapping was the result of a persistent binding, or 'Auto', indicating that the target was automapped. In the Display Mode section, choose the display mode you want to use.



- If you want to change the Active Bind Type (the mode used to persistently bind target mappings) or Automapping setting, click Change Settings. Select the Bind Type (WWPN, WWNN or D\_ID), and set Automapping to Enabled or Disabled.
- **Note:** All mapped targets, whether automapped or resulting from a persistent binding configuration, will have entries in the "Current Mappings" table on the Target Mapping dialog box.

If the binding that you defined has been successfully activated, you will see the following message:

"The new binding has been created and is currently active."

If, however, the binding was successfully created, but could not be made active, you will see the following message:

"The new binding has been created. Note that this binding will not become active until after you have rebooted the system." Generally, you should ensure that the bind type in the Current Settings section of the Target Mapping dialog box is the same as the type of binding selected in the Persistent Binding Configuration section of the dialog box.

To add a persistent binding:

- 1. In the Targets Table, click the target that you want to bind.
- 2. Click Add Binding. The Add Persistent Binding dialog box is displayed.

Add Persiste     Bind Type Sel	nt Binding X
( WWPN	50:06:04:82:BF:D0:4A:43
OWWN	50:06:04:82:8F:D0:4A:43
_ <u>D</u> _ID	610a13
<u>B</u> us ID: 0	Y
	O <u>K</u> Cancel

Figure 33: HBAnyware Utility, Add Persistent Binding Dialog Box

3. Select the Bind Type that you want to use (WWPN, WWNN or D\_ID).



- 4. Select the Bus ID and Target ID that you want to bind, and click **OK**.
- **Note:** All mapped targets, whether automapped or resulting from a persistent binding configuration, will have entries in the "Current Mappings" table on the Target Mapping dialog box.

If the binding that you defined has been successfully activated, you will see the following message:

"The new binding has been created and is currently active."

If, however, the binding was successfully created, but could not be made active, you will see the following message:

"The new binding has been created. Note that this binding will not become active until after you have rebooted the system." Generally, you should ensure that the bind type in the Current Settings section of the Target Mapping dialog box is the same as the type of binding selected in the Persistent Binding Configuration section of the dialog box.

To bind a target that does not appear in the Persistent Binding Table:

1. Click **Bind New Target**. The Bind New Target dialog box is displayed.

	( WW <u>P</u> N					
	OWWNN	F			1	
<u>D</u> _ID	<u>्र .</u> ।D	J.	_	 Ū.		
	D: 0	V				
D: 0 V		No.				

Figure 34: HBAnyware Utility, Bind New Target Dialog Box

- Click the type of binding you want to use, and type the WWPN, WWNN or D\_ID you want to bind to the target.
- 3. Select the Bus ID and Target ID that you want to bind, and click **OK**.

**Note:** A target will not appear on the target list if automapping has been disabled and the target is not already persistently bound.



## Adding New Targets Using sd.conf for Solaris 8, 9 and 10

You can perform on-the-fly configuration changes, without rebooting, using the HBAnyware utility. For Solaris 8, you must first add the new targets to the sd.conf file.

To add new targets using sd.conf (Solaris 8):

1. Edit the Solaris SCSI configuration file (sd.conf):

```
#vi /kernel/drv/sd.conf
.
.
name="sd" parent="lpfc" target=17 lun=1;
name="sd" parent="lpfc" target=18 lun=10;
name="sd" parent="lpfc" target=19 lun=15;
.
.
```

2. Save the file and exit vi.

## Changing Parameters or Bindings for Solaris 7, 8, 9 and 10

To change parameters or bindings in Solaris 9 and 10, edit the sd.conf file as shown above and force a reread of the file with the update\_drv -f sd command.

To change parameters or bindings in Solaris 7 or 8:

- 1. Stop all I/O on the device.
- 2. Unconfigure all ports with open instances to the driver.
- 3. Unload the driver using the modunload command. (See "Loading or Unloading the Driver without Rebooting" on page 61 for more information.)
- 4. Reload the driver using the modload command. (See "Loading or Unloading the Driver without Rebooting" on page 61 for more information.)

### Setting Up Persistent Binding Using the Iputil Utility

Persistent binding allows you to permanently assign a system SCSI target ID to a specific Fibre Channel (FC) device even though the device's ID on the FC loop (D\_ID) may be different each time the FC loop initializes. This capability is useful in multi-server environments that share a device. You can simplify system management by having multiple servers use the same SCSI target ID when referring to the shared FC device.

To set up persistent binding using the lputil utility:

1. Start the lputil utility.



The Main menu opens:

MAIN MENU
<ol> <li>List Adapters</li> <li>Adapter Information</li> <li>Firmware Maintenance</li> <li>Reset Adapter</li> <li>Persistent Binding</li> <li>Exit</li> </ol>
Enter choice =>5

Figure 35: The Iputil, Main menu

2. Select choice #5. The Persistent Binding menu opens:

PERSISTENT BINDINGS MENU
<ol> <li>Display Current Bindings</li> <li>Display All Nodes</li> <li>Duplicate Adapter Bindings</li> <li>Bind Target Manually</li> <li>Bind Automapped Targets</li> <li>Delete Bindings</li> </ol>
0. Return to Main Menu
Enter choice =>4

Figure 36: The Iputil, Persistent Bindings menu

- 3. To establish new bindings, select option => 4.
- 4. Select an HBA.
- 5. Selecting a binding method.

**Note:** In a fabric environment, the D\_ID may change when the system is rebooted. We suggest binding to the Node Name or Port Name in a fabric environment.

- 1. By Node Name
- 2. By Port Name
- 3. By D\_ID
- 0. Cancel
- 6. Enter the Node Name, Port Name, or D\_ID, depending on binding method.
- 7. Enter the target number  $\Rightarrow 0$ .

### Setting Up Target/LUN Blocking Using sd.conf

The class keyword ("scsi") ensures that Solaris specifically probes all adapters controlled by all driver that register themselves as class="scsi". The parent keyword ("lpfc") ensures that Solaris specifically probes all adapters controlled by the lpfc driver for the specified targets and LUNS. The class and parent keywords cause the SCSI layer to probe multiple adapters, even multiple adapters across multiple drivers. This method limits the SCSI layer probing of targets and LUNS on an adapter-by-adapter basis. This gives you control over which targets and LUNS are seen by each initiator (target/LUN blocking).



To set up target/LUN blocking using sd.conf:

- 1. Reboot the system with the adapter installed.
- 2. Check the output of dmesg(1M). This message displays in the following format:

NOTICE: Device Path for interface lpfcX:/pci@1f.0/pci@1/fibrechannel@3

**Note:** Where lpfcX is the interface for a specific adapter and /pci@1f.0/pci@1/fibrechannel@3 is the device path for the specific adapter.

3. Add entries to the sd.conf file in the following format:

```
name="sd" parent="lpfc" target=16 lun=0 hba="lpfcX";
```

Note: This entry does not cancel the effect of any other parent="lpfc" or class="scsi" entries for target=16 lun=0. If you want the SCSI layer to probe only for target=16 lun=0 on device lpfcX, the parent="lpfc" or class="scsi" entries for target=16 lun=0 need to be deleted. You can cause system problems if certain class="scsi" entries are deleted. These entries are used by the SCSI adapter, so if there is a SCSI boot disk at target=0 lun=0 whose probe entry has been deleted, the system won't boot. Similarly, if any SCSI target's probe entry is deleted, that device won't operate. To guarantee that the Fibre Channel and SCSI probing won't conflict, use persistent binding to assign FC devices target numbers greater then 15. Persistent binding can be used to perform target blocking but not LUN blocking.



# **Enabling IP Networking**

## Overview

Usually, IP networking is enabled during driver installation. Use this procedure to enable IP networking if it was not enabled during driver installation. In addition, if there is more than one adapter in the host, and both storage and IP networking functions are desired, this procedure will tell the system which adapters will have IP functionality. All others will have storage functionality.

To enable IP networking:

- 1. If IP networking support was not enabled during initial driver installation, update the lpfc.conf file to enable IP networking.
- 2. Modify the /etc/hosts file to add the hostname and IP address of the Solaris host.
- 3. Create a hostname.lpfcX file and assign the network name for additional host adapter X.
- 4. Reboot the system. Upon rebooting, Solaris will automatically configure and set up the additional adapters for networking.
- 5. Verify the network connection by pinging a known IP address.

#### **Enabling the Networking Driver Parameter**

IP networking defaults to disabled and is usually enabled during driver installation. If you are enabling IP networking after the driver is installed, you need to set the network-on driver parameter to 1.

To enable the networking driver parameter:

- 1. Use any editor (for example, vi) to update lpfc.conf and enable networking:
  - vi /kernel/drv/lpfc.conf
- 2. To enable IP networking, enter a binary 1 for the network-on driver parameter (1 = 0, 0 = 0).

### **Creating Hostname.lpfc# Files**

#### **Required Hostname File**

When you install the driver for the first time, you are required to create a file named hostname.lpfc0 for the first host bus adapter (HBA) found. This file corresponds to the device instance number. If for any reason the device instance number changes, the file name must change accordingly. Use any text editor to edit the etc/hosts file, to associate an IP address with the HBA's network host name.

#### Additional Hostname Files

You must also manually create a hostname.lpfc# file for each additional HBA in the system. Each hostname.lpfc# file contains the network host name of the HBA. Usually you create these additional hostnames during the installation process, however you can also add HBAs to your system after you install the driver.

Use any text editor to edit the /etc/hostname.lpfcx (where x is the HBA number in decimal format).

#### Example

123.456.7.8 fibre1 123.456.8.9 fibre2 123.456.8.1 myhost



To create a hostname.lpfc# file:

- 1. Using any text editor, create a new file with the name 'fibre1' in it. Save this file as hostname.lpfc0. This is the required hostname file.
- 2. Create another new file with the name 'fibre2' in it. Save this file as hostname.lpfc1.
- 3. Create another new file with the name 'myhost' in it. Save this file as hostname.lpfc2.
- 4. If you are creating additional hostname files during an installation, continue with step 13 on the Install a Driver for the First Time page in the User Manual.

**Note:** If you are adding an HBA to your network after the driver is installed, a reboot is necessary to configure and set up the additional HBA for networking.

#### Verifying the Network Connection

Verify the connection to the network by pinging a known IP address.

ping ip\_address

At this point, you may use the host adapter or configure additional Solaris parameters to increase performance or optimize driver operation in a unique environment. To perform additional configuration changes, consult your Solaris documentation.

## **Enabling IP Networking for Multiple Adapters**

To enable networking on two or more installed host adapters in the same system, you must create additional hostname.lpfcX files manually (where X is the instance number of the host adapter being configured). Upon rebooting, Solaris will automatically configure and set up the additional adapters for networking.

If IP networking support is enabled after the initial driver installation, the network-on setting must be updated in lpfc.conf.

Any name given in the hostname.lpfcX files must have a valid IP address associated with it. The IP address is established through NIS, DNS or another addressing scheme.

Alternately, rerun the installation procedure (doing so is called an update). Before you update the driver, be sure to save the hostname file and IP address information in a temp file. Running an update install provides the opportunity to enable IP networking support, then restore all hostname file and IP address information, as well as all saved configuration file settings. Reboot the system for these changes to take effect. See the "Installation" section of this manual for more information about updating the driver.

### **Creating Additional Hostname.lpfc# Files**

When the driver is installed, a file named hostname.lpfc0 is created for the first adapter found. (This file corresponds to the device instance number. If for any reason the device instance number changes, the file name must change accordingly.) You must manually create a hostname.lpfc# file for each additional adapter in the system. Each hostname.lpfc# file contains the network host name of the adapter.

For example, if we have three adapters:

123.456.7.8 fibre1 123.456.8.9 fibre2 123.456.8.1 myhost

the file hostname.lpfc0 is created and contains the name 'fibre1'.



Using any text editor, create a new file with the name 'fibre2' in it. Save this file as hostname.lpfc1.

Again, create another file with the name 'myhost' in it. Save this file as hostname.lpfc2.

### Configuring the System-Wide File (/etc/system)

Normally, you do not need to modify the contents of /etc/system. Most required changes for /etc/system are made automatically during the installation. All of the commonly used parameters are in lpfc.conf and the target driver configuration file. Listed below are a few cases that may require modification of the /etc/ system.

#### Driver Installed in a Non-Standard Directory (moddir)

The moddir parameter specifies a series of directories that the kernel will search for loadable device drivers at boot time. If you specify a non-standard installation directory, the installation process will create or update the moddir parameter to include the new directory. If this fails, or if you later decide to move the lpfc.conf file, you must create or update moddir.

#### **IP Networking Enabled (forceload)**

This parameter loads the specified modules at boot time, just before mounting the root filesystem, rather than at first reference. You will find this example in /etc/system after installing the driver (assuming you enabled IP networking):

#### #forceload: drv/clone

The kernel locates the modules specified in forceload by consulting moddir. If you enable IP networking for the host adapter driver, the parameter forceload must be set to drv/clone for correct operation. The lpfn driver is dependent on the clone driver. Normally, the clone driver would load itself automatically when the driver calls it the first time. However, the lpfn driver is loaded so early in the system boot sequence that a forced loading of the clone driver is required.



## Performing Diagnostic Tests Using the HBAnyware Utility

Use the Diagnostics tab to do the following:

- Run these tests on Emulex HBA's installed in the system:
  - PCI Loopback (see page 121)
  - Internal Loopback (see page 121)
  - External Loopback (see page 121)
  - Power-On Self Test (POST) (see page 118)
  - Echo (End-to-End) (see page 123)
  - Quick Test (see page 117)
- Perform a diagnostic dump (see page 119).
- View PCI registers and wakeup parameter (see page 119).
- Control HBA beaconing (see page 118).



Figure 37: HBAnyware Utility, Diagnostics Tab

All functions are supported locally and remotely, except for the dump feature which is only supported locally.

#### **Running a Quick Test**

The Diagnostics tab enables you to run a "quick" diagnostics test on a selected HBA. The Quick Test consists of 50 PCI Loopback test cycles and 50 Internal Loopback test cycles.

To run a quick test:

- 1. Start the HBAnyware utility.
- 2. From the discovery-tree, select the HBA on which you wish to run the Quick Test.



3. Select the Diagnostics tab and click **Quick Test**. The following message appears:



Figure 38: HBAnyware Utility, Quick Test Message

4. Click **OK** to run the test. The Quick Diagnostics Test message shows the PCI Loopback and Internal Loopback test results.

#### **Running a POST Test**

The POST (Power On Self Test) is a firmware test normally performed on an HBA after a reset or restart. The POST does not require any configuration to run.

To run the POST Test:

- 1. Start the HBAnyware utility.
- 2. From the discovery-tree, select the HBA on which you wish to run the POST Test.
- 3. Select the Diagnostics tab and click Power-on Self Test (POST). A warning dialog box appears.



Figure 39: HBAnyware Utility, POST Test Warning Window

4. Click **OK**. A POST Test window shows POST test information.

#### Using Beaconing

The beaconing feature enables you to force a specific HBA's LEDs to blink in a particular sequence. The blinking pattern acts as a beacon, making it easier to locate a specific HBA among racks of other HBAs.

When you enable beaconing, the two LEDs blink rapidly in unison for 24 seconds, after which the LEDs report the HBA health status for 8 seconds. When the 8 seconds are up, the HBA returns to beaconing mode. This cycle repeats indefinitely until you disable this feature or you reset the HBA.

**Note:** The beaconing buttons are disabled if the selected HBA does not support beaconing.

To enable or disable beaconing:

- 1. Start the HBAnyware utility.
- 2. From the discovery-tree, select the HBA whose LEDs you wish to set.
- 3. Select the Diagnostics tab and click **Beacon On** or **Beacon Off**.



## **Creating Diagnostic Dumps**

The diagnostic dump feature enables you to create a "dump" file for a selected HBA. Dump files contain various information such as firmware version, driver version and so on, that is particularly useful when troubleshooting an HBA.

Note: The Diagnostic Dump feature is only supported for local HBAs. If a remote HBA is selected from the tree-view, the Initiate Diagnostic Dump is disabled.

To start a diagnostic dump:

- 1. Start the HBAnyware utility.
- 2. From the discovery-tree, select a local HBA whose diagnostic information you wish to dump.
- Select the Diagnostics tab and click Diagnostic Dump. The Diagnostic Dump dialog box appears. You can specify how many files you want to save using the Files Retained counter. Click Delete Existing Dump Files if you wish to remove existing dump files from your system.

Diagnostic Dump	×
Dump Details	1
Target WWPN: 10:00:00:C9:50:B3:88 Dump File Directory: /usr/sbin/hbanyware/Dump	
Dump File Retention	1
Currently, up to 20 dump files per adapter may be retained on this host. You may change the number of retained dump files, but be aware that the individual dump files can be as large as 6 megabytes. Take this into account when selecting a retention count.	
Files Retained: 20 7	
Delete Existing Dump Files	
Start Dump	

Figure 40: HBAnyware Utility, Diagnostic Dump Dialog Box

4. Click Start Dump.

### **Displaying PCI Registers and Wakeup Information**

A PCI Register dump for the selected HBA appears in the lower left panel of the Diagnostics tab. Wakeup information for the selected HBA appears in the lower right panel of the Diagnostics tab. The information is read-only and is depicted below:

Field	Value		Parameter	Value
Vendor ID	10DF		Initial Load	02E01915 00555637
Device ID	F980		Flags	00000000
Command	011F		Boot BIOS	03675015 00101303
Statut	0280		SU-1	06631915 00103411
Revision	01		SU-2	07631915 00103411
Prodif	00		SU-3	00000000 00000000
Sub class	04		SU-4	00000000 00000000
Base Class	00		eROM	03675015 00101303
Cache line size	10		Exp R0M	Yes
I stand Times	00	-	1	

Figure 41: HBAnyware Utility, PCI Registers and Wakeup Parameters Area of the Diagnostics Tab



## **Running Advanced Diagnostic Tests**

The Advanced Diagnostics feature gives you greater control than the Quick Test over the type of diagnostics tests that run. Through Advanced Diagnostics, you can specify which tests to run, the number of cycles to run, and what to do in the event of a test failure.

To run advanced diagnostics tests:

- 1. Start the HBAnyware utility.
- 2. Click **Advanced Diagnostics Test** on the Diagnostics tab to view the Advanced Diagnostics dialog box.

You can run four types of tests:

- PCI Loopback
- Internal Loopback
- External Loopback
- End-to-End (ECHO)

**Note:** You cannot run the External Loopback test and ECHO test concurrently. If you select External Loopback the ECHO test section is disabled and vice versa.

All test results, plus the status of running tests, are time stamped and appear in the log at bottom of the dialog box.

802 - 10:	00:00:00:C9:2E:51:2E				
Test Setup	-				
Loopb P I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I	ack Tests CI Loopback ternal Loopback demal Loopback (requires lo	opback plug)	Error Action Stop Test C Ignore	Start	Stop
End-to	End (ECHO) Test cho Test get Worldwide Port Name 0 00 00 00 00 00 S	2E 51 CE elect from list	C 1 C 1 C 100 C 1000 C 1000	Test Status PCI: Internat Externat ECHO: Status:	Errors Cycles 0 100 0 100 0 0 0 0 100 0 0
Test Log			<b>0</b>		-
1me 09:33:36 09:33:36 09:33:36 09:33:43 09:33:43	Test Loopback Tests PCI Loopback Test PCI Loopback Test Internal Loopback Test Internal Loopback Test Echo Test	Started - (100 cycles, si Started 100 cycles completed v Started 100 cycles completed v The link on the adapter	Hesults lop on errors) with 0 errors in 0.015 sec. with 0 xmit & 0 recv. errors in is down. Unable to run the	n 6.546 sec. n test.	Clear Save to file
					Exit

Figure 42: HBAnyware Utility, Advanced Diagnostics Dialog Box



## Running Loopback Tests

To run a loopback test, use the "Loopback Test" section of the Advanced Diagnostics dialog box.

You can run the following loopback test combinations using the appropriate check boxes:

- PCI Loopback Test A firmware controlled diagnostic test in which a random data pattern is routed through the PCI bus without being sent to an adapter link port. The returned data is subsequently validated for integrity.
- Internal Loopback Test A diagnostic test in which a random data pattern is sent down to an adapter link port, then is immediately returned without actually going out on the port. The returned data is subsequently validated for integrity.
- External Loopback Test A diagnostic test in which a random data pattern is sent down to an adapter link port. The data goes out the port and immediately returns via a loopback connector. The returned data is subsequently validated for integrity.

**Note:** You cannot run the External Loopback test and ECHO test concurrently. If you select External Loopback the ECHO test section is disabled and vice versa.

You can specify the number of test cycles by clicking one of the cycle counts values in the "Test Cycles" section of the dialog box or enter a custom cycle count if you wish. The Test Status section displays how many cycles of each test ran. The "Error Action" section of the dialog box enables you to define what should be done in the event of a test failure.

There are two error action options:

- Stop Test The error will be logged and the test aborted. No further tests will run.
- Ignore Log the error and proceed with the next test cycle.

To run loopback tests:

- 1. Start the HBAnyware utility.
- 2. From the discovery-tree, select the HBA on which you wish to run the Loopback Test.
- 3. Select the Diagnostics tab and click **Advanced Diagnostics Tests**. From the "Loopback Test" section of the dialog box, choose the type of Loopback test you wish to run and define the loopback test parameters.

Note: You must insert a loopback plug in the selected HBA before running an External Loopback test.

4. Click Start. The following warning appears:

Advance	d Diagnostic Tests
	The test sequence your are about to run requires taking the selected adapter off line. Please ensure that all 10 activity on this port has stopped before proceeding.
	Press OK to run the test, or Cancel to skip it
	OK Cancel

Figure 43: HBAnyware Utility, Advanced Diagnostic Tests Warning



5. Click **OK**. If you choose to run an External Loopback test the following window appears:



Figure 44: HBAnyware Utility, Advanced Diagnostic Tests Warning for External Loopback

6. Click **OK**. The progress bar indicates that the test is running.

Periodic test feedback, consisting of the current loopback test/cycle plus the completion status of each type of test, is displayed in the "Test Log" section of the dialog box. Click **Clear** to erase the contents of the log display or click **Save to File** to save the log file.



## Running End-to-End (ECHO) Tests

Run echo tests using the "End-to-End (ECHO) Test" section of the Diagnostics tab. The end-to-end test enables you send an ECHO command/response sequence between an HBA port and a target port.

Note: Not all remote devices respond to an echo command.

You cannot run the ECHO test and the External Loopback test concurrently. If you select the ECHO Test the External Loopback test is disabled.

To run end-to-end echo tests:

- 1. Start the HBAnyware utility.
- From the discovery-tree, select the HBA from which you wish to initiate the End-to-End (ECHO) Test.
- 3. Select the Diagnostics tab. Click Advanced Diagnostics Test.
- 4. Check Echo Test. Enter the World Wide Port Name (WWPN) for the target.

or

Click **Select From List** if you do not know the actual WWPN of the test target. The Select Echo Test Target dialog box appears. Select the port you wish to test from the tree-view and click **Select**.

All relevant information for the selected port is automatically added to the Target Identifier section of the Diagnostics dialog box.

pters: ## Hosts ## V0700391-1051 ## UP10000 - 10:00:00:09:37:40:69 ## UP100000C - 10:00:00:00:09:37:40:6A ## UP100000C - 10:00:00:00:09:37:40:6A ## UP101 - 10:00:00:00:09:37:90:64	Targets 21:00:00:04:CF:50:C4:ED 21:00:00:04:CF:50:C5:36 21:00:00:04:CF:50:CF:3A 21:00:00:04:CF:50:CF:8F 21:00:00:04:CF:50:D3:71 21:00:00:04:CF:50:D3:23 15:00:00:04:CF:50:D3:23 15:00:00:04:CF:50:D3:23

Figure 45: HBAnyware Utility, Select Echo Test Target Window

5. Click Start. The following warning window appears:



Figure 46: HBAnyware Utility, Advanced Diagnostic Tests Warning



6. Click **OK**. A result screen appears and the test results appear in the Test Log. Click **Clear** to erase the contents of the log display or click **Save to File** to save the log file.

### Saving the Log File

You can save the test log to a log file for later viewing or printing. When new data is written to a saved file, the data is appended to the end of the file. Each entry has a two-line header that contains the identifier of the HBA being tested and the date and time of the test. Over time, the data accumulates to form a chronological history of the diagnostics performed on the HBA.

After writing an entry into the log, you are prompted to clear the display.

The default name of the saved file is DiagTestLog.log and by default is located in: /usr/sbin/hbanyware/Dump

An example of a saved log file appears below:

🖉 DiagTestLog.log - Notepad		×
Ele Edit Format Help		
Diagnostic Test Log created on Tuesday, November Adapter Tested: LP9802 - 10:00:00:00:C9:2E:51:2E 11:09:25 Loopback Tests 11:09:26 PCI Loopback Test 11:09:26 Internal Loopback Test 11:09:32 Internal Loopback Test 11:09:32 Echo Test in 6.437 sec. 11:09:32 Echo Test the test.	08, 2005 11:09:44 Started - (100 cycles, stop on errors) Started 100 cycles completed with 0 errors in 0.016 sec. Started 100 cycles completed with 0 xmit & 0 recv. errors The link on the adapter is down. Unable to run	×
Diagnostic Test Log created on Tuesday, November Adapter Tested: LP9802 - 10:00:00:00:C9:2E:51:2E 11:11:25 Echo Test 11:11:25 Echo Test	08, 2005 11:11:33 Started to end target 10:00:00:00:C9:29:1A:72. 100 cycles completed with 0 errors in 0.046 sec.	
]		Υ.

Figure 47: DiagTestLog Window

To save the log file:

- After running a test from the Diagnostic Test Setup dialog box, Click Save to File. The Select Diagnostic Log file Name dialog box appears. The default name of a saved file is DiagTestLog.log.
- 2. Browse to the desired directory, change the log file name if you wish and click **Save**.



# **Out-of-Band SAN Management**

Out-of-Band (OOB) remote SAN management is achieved by sending the remote management requests over a LAN using the Ethernet TCP/IP protocol to remote hosts.

In-band management is achieved by sending the remote management requests over a SAN to remote hosts.

The principle differences between in-band and out-of-band SAN Management are:

- A management host with an HBA installed does not need to connect to a fabric to manage other hosts.
- An OOB management host can manage all of the HBAs in a remote host, not just the ones connected to the same fabric. In-band can only manage HBAs connected to the same fabric.
- You can manage many more hosts since OOB is not constrained by the boundaries of a fabric or zoning.
- True board status (e.g. link down) is available since the in-band path is not necessary to send a status request to the remote host.
- HBA security in an OOB environment is much more important since many more hosts are available for management and OOB access is not affected by fabrics or zoning.
- Discovery of hosts in an OOB environment is much more difficult than in-band discovery.

## Adding a Single Host

The HBAnyware utility enables you to specify a single OOB host to manage. If the host is successfully discovered as a manageable host, it is added to the static list of hosts and if it has not been discovered in-band, the host and its HBAs are added to the discovery tree.

To add a single host:

- 1. Start the HBAnyware utility.
- 2. From the Discovery menu, select **Out-of-Band/Add Host**. The Add Remote Host dialog box appears.



Figure 48: HBAnyware Utility, Add Remote Host Dialog Box

3. Enter the name or the IP address of the host to be added. Entering the IP address is the best way to add a new host.

**Note:** Using the IP address to identify the host avoids name resolution issues.

4. Click **OK**. You will receive a message indicating whether or not the new host was successfully added.



## Adding a Range of Hosts

You can find the OOB manageable hosts by searching a range of IP addresses using the Add Rang	ge of
IP Hosts dialog box.	

Add Range of IP Ho	sts
New IP Address Range Range Start:	
Current IP Address Ranges Start Address End Address	Deste Start Discovery
	Stop, Discovery Saye Ranges to File
	Cancel
Total addresses to search: 0	
Inscanned addresses: 0	
New hosts found: 0	
Discovery Status: Idle	

Figure 49: HBAnyware Utility, Add Remote Hosts Window

The Add Range of IP Hosts dialog box enables you to build the initial list of OOB manageable hosts.

To add a range of hosts:

- 1. Start the HBAnyware utility.
- From the Discovery menu, select Out-of-Band/Add Range of Hosts. The Add Range of IP Hosts dialog box appears.
- 3. Enter the complete start and end address range and click **Add**. The added address range appears in the dialog box. Add any additional ranges you wish to search.



 Click Start Discovery. HBAnyware checks each address in the range to determine if the host is available and remotely manageable. The number of addresses discovered (of manageable hosts) is periodically updated on the dialog box.

**Note:** The number of addresses does not correspond directly to the number of hosts added to the discovery-tree.

For example, some of the addresses discovered may be for hosts that have already been discovered in-band. However, new HBAs may be discovered on those hosts that were not discovered in-band.

Also, a host may have more than one HBA installed and both IP addresses for that host are discovered during the search, but only one host will possibly be added to the discovery-tree.

- 5. When the search is complete, click **Cancel**.
- 6. A dialog box appears asking to save the IP ranges you searched. Click **Yes** to save the address ranges. If you save the address ranges, these address ranges will appear the next time you use the Add Range of IP Hosts dialog box. Click **No** if you do not want to save the address ranges.

The **Save Ranges to A File** button saves the specified range(s) to a file so that the same ranges can be automatically invoked when the HBAnyware utility is started again.

### **Removing Hosts**

Periodically you may want to remove hosts that are no longer part of the network. You may want to remove a host when it is removed from the network or to detect hosts that are no longer being discovered. Removing hosts that can no longer be discovered improves the operation of the discovery server.

To remove hosts:

- 1. Start the HBAnyware utility.
- From the Discovery menu, select Out-of-Band/Remove Host. The Remove Remote Hosts dialog box shows a list of discovered OOB hosts. Any host not currently discovered appears in red. Click Show Undiscovered Hosts Only to only display currently undiscovered hosts.
- 3. From the Remove Remote Hosts dialog box, select the hosts you wish to remove. You can select all the displayed hosts by clicking **Select All**.
- 4. Click **OK** to remove the selected hosts.



# **HBAnyware Security**

## Introduction

After you install the base HBAnyware software, which includes the HBAnyware utility and remote server, on a group of systems, the HBAnyware utility on any of those systems can remotely access and manage the HBAs on any systems in the group. This may not be a desirable situation, because any system can perform actions such as resetting boards or downloading firmware.

You can use the HBAnyware utility security package to control which HBAnyware enabled systems can remotely access and manage HBAs on other systems in a Fibre Channel network. HBAnyware security is systems-based, not user-based. Anyone with access to a system that has been granted HBAnyware client access to remote HBAs can manage those HBAs. Any unsecured system is still remotely accessible by the HBAnyware client software (HBAnyware utility).

The HBAnyware security software provides two main security features:

- 1. Prevent remote HBA management from systems that you do not want to have this capability.
- 2. Prevent an accidental operation (such as firmware download) on a remote HBA. In this case, you do not want to have access to HBAs in systems you are not responsible for maintaining.

The first time you run the HBAnyware Security Configurator on a system in an environment where no security as been configured, the initial Access Control Group (ACG) is created. At this point, only this system has remote access to the HBAs in the systems in the ACG. They are no longer remotely accessible from any other system.

Subsequently, you can create additional Access Sub-Groups (ASGs). This grants systems in the ACG the ability to remotely access the HBAs of other selected systems in the ACG.

### Starting the HBAnyware Security Configurator

#### Prerequisites

Before you can start the HBAnyware Security Configurator, you must have the following items installed on your system. See the "Installation" section of this manual for more information.

- The Emulex driver for Solaris
- The HBAnyware and Iputil Utilities
- The HBAnyware Security Configurator

**Note:** Before you start the Configurator, you must make sure that all of the systems that are part of, or will be part of, the security configuration are online on the Fibre Channel network so that they receive updates or changes made to the security configuration.

Any system that is already part of the security installation might not run with the proper security attributes, if updates to the security configuration are made while it is offline.

Any system that is part of the security installation and that is offline when the HBAnyware Security Configurator starts will not be available for security configuration changes even if it is brought online while the Configurator is running.



#### Procedure

To start the HBAnyware Security Configurator:

1. Run the /usr/sbin/hbanyware/ssc script. Type:

/usr/sbin/hbanyware/ssc

## Running the Configurator for the First Time/Creating the ACG

When the HBAnyware Security software is installed on a system and the HBAnyware Security Configurator is run for the first time, that system becomes the Master Security Client (MSC). All of the available servers are discovered and available to become part of the system Access Control Group (ACG). You select the systems to be added to the ACG, and the security configuration is updated on all of the selected servers as well as on the initial system. This selection constitutes the participating platforms in this security installation.

To create the ACG:

 Start the HBAnyware Security Configurator for the first time in an unsecure environment. The computer from which you run the Configurator will become the MSC. The following message is displayed:

HUAnywa	are Security Configurator
٩	This utility is running on an unsecure system. Continuing will allow you to set up a new security configuration making this system the Master Client System.
	Cancel

Figure 50: Security Configurator, "Unsecure System" Message

2. Click **OK**. The Access Control Group tab is displayed.



Figure 51: Security Configurator, Access Control Group Tab



3. Select the unsecured servers that you want to add to the ACG from the Available Servers list.

Remove Security G	enerate New Keys		
Enable Switch Access	Select the server.		Restore
coess Control Group Servers		Available Servers:	-
Acct_2	<u>_</u>	CiAtDb_0_Srv	-
Adm_0	1	CustDb_1_Srv	
P Adm_1	20 B B B B B B B B B B B B B B B B B B B	CustDb_10_Srv	
Adm_2	Click to add to the	list. Db_11_Srv	
CustDb_8_Srv		IDb_2_Srv	
CustOb_9_Srv	4	CustDb_3_Srv	
B Engr_0		CustDb_4_Srv	
Eng_1	100-0001	CustDb_5_Srv	
曾Eng_2	<b>→</b>	CustDb_6_Srv	
Engr_3		CustDb_7_Siv	
管 Engr_4		Engr_7	
B Eng_5		HRSys_0	
ge Engt_6		HRSys_1	
B Mard_0	locate of	III HRSva 2	
G Manf 1	UICK U	K or Apply.	

Figure 52: Security Configurator, Access Group Control Tab with Call Outs

- 4. Click the **left arrow** to add the servers to the Access Control Group Servers list.
- 5. Click OK or Apply.

#### **Designating a Master Security Client**

The first time you run the HBAnyware Security Configurator on any system in a Fibre Channel network, that system becomes the MSC (Master Security Client). See "Running the Configurator for the First Time" on page 129 for more information.

#### Access Control Groups

#### Introduction

The Access Control Group tab shows the systems that are part of a client's Access Control Group (ACG) and, from the Master Security Client (MSC), allows you to select the systems that belong to the ACG.

#### Access Control Group Tab on the MSC

On the MSC, you select or deselect the systems that are to be part of the security installation in the Access Control Group tab. When you select unsecure systems and move them to the Access Control Group Servers list, these systems are updated to secure them and bring them into the MSC's ACG.



When you select systems in the ACG and move them to the Available Servers list, the security configuration for those systems is updated to make them unsecure. After you have configured security from the MSC for the first time, the Access Control Group tab looks similar to the following:

Remove Security	Generate New Keys		
Enable Switch Access			Rectore
Access Control Group Serve	18:	Available Servers:	-
Acct_2	*	CustOb_0_Srv	
Adm_0		CustDb_1_Srv	
😤 Adm_1		CustDb_10_Srv	
😤 Adm_2		CustDb_11_Srv	
CustDb_8_Srv		CustDb_2_Srv	
CustOb_9_Srv	1000	CustDb_3_Srv	
Eng_0		CustDb_4_Srv	
BEng_1		CustDb_5_Srv	
BEng_2	- 10 - 10 - 10 - 10 - 10 - 10 - 10 - 10	CustDb_6_Srv	
Eng_3		CustDb_7_Siv	
鲁 Engr_4		EngL7	
Eng_5		HRSys_0	
Engr_6		HRSys_1	
Hanl_0		HRSys_2	
Mari 1		ARSys_3	
B Mard 2	2	I Makin R	2

Figure 53: Security Configurator, Access Control Group Tab on a non-MSC system

#### Access Control Group Tab on a Non-MSC

On a non-MSC system, the Access Control Group tab shows the systems that are part of the client's ACG. You cannot modify the ACG on a non-MSC. (You can modify the ACG only on the MSC or a client higher in the security topology's hierarchy.) The ACG tab on a non-MSC system looks similar to the following:

Millionyware Security Configuration	×
Access Control Broup Access Sub-Broups   About	
The following systems are part of this system's docess Control Group	
6 Eng.1 6 Eng.3 6 Eng.3 6 Eng.3 6 Eng.3 6 Eng.5 6 Eng.5 6 Eng.6 6 Eng.7	
Ew	at

Figure 54: Security Configurator, Access Control Group Tab after MSC security is configured



## ACG Icons

Depending on the configured security topology, a system can be a server in one or more ACGs. It can also be a client to an ACG. The following icons indicate the state of each of the systems in the Access Control Group Servers list.



The system is a secure server in the ACG. It does not belong to an Access Sub-Group (ASG). You can remove this system from the ACG.



The system is a secure server in the ACG and belongs to one or more ASGs. You can remove this system from the ACG.



The system is a secure server in the ACG and a client to an ASG. You cannot remove this system from the ACG until you remove it as a client from the ASG.



The system is a secure server in the ACG, a secure server in one or more ASGs and a client to an ASG You cannot remove this system from the ACG until you remove it as a client from the ASGs.



The system is a Backup Master. You cannot remove this system from the ACG until you remove it as a Backup Master.

#### **Creating the ACG**

When the HBAnyware Security software is installed on a system and the HBAnyware Security Configurator is run for the first time, that system becomes the Master Security Client (MSC). All of the available servers are discovered and available to become part of the system Access Control Group (ACG). You select the systems to be added to the ACG, and the security configuration is updated on all of the selected servers as well as on the initial system. This selection constitutes the participating platforms in this security installation.

To create the ACG:

 Start the HBAnyware Security Configurator for the first time in an unsecure environment. The computer from which you run the Configurator will become the MSC. The following message is displayed:



Figure 55: HBAnyware Security Configurator message



2. Select the unsecured servers that you want to add to the ACG from the Available Servers list.

Remove Security G	enerate New Keys		
Enable Switch Access	Select the server.		Restore
Access Control Group Servers:		Available Servers:	
Apct_2	<u>*</u>	CiAtDb_0_Srv	-
TAdm_0	of	CustDb_1_Srv	
😤 Adm_1	an market	CustDb_10_Srv	
Adm_2	Click to add to the	list. 0b_11_Siv	
CustDb_8_Srv		Db_2_Srv	
CulDb_9_Siv	4	CustDb_3_Srv	
We Englo		CustOb_4_Srv	
Engl_1	in the sector	CalDb_5_Siv	
智Eng_2		CutOb_6_SN	
Eng_3		CuaDb_7_Siv	
Engr_4		Engl_/	
Breng_p		HHSys_0	
H Engle		HPISUS_1	
Mary_U	Click O	K or Apply	
Mani_1		n or Apply.	

Figure 56: Security Configurator, The Access Group Control Tab with Call Outs

- 3. Click the left arrow to add the servers to the Access Control Group Servers list.
- 4. Click OK or Apply.

#### Adding a Server to the ACG

After you create the initial Access Control Group (ACG) on the Master Security Client (MSC), you may want to add unsecured servers to the ACG.

To add servers to the ACG:

1. Start the HBAnyware Security Configurator.



2. On the Access Control Group tab, from the Available Servers list, select the unsecured servers that you want to add to the ACG.

Remove Security 0	ienerate New Keys		
Enable Switch Access	Select the server	·	Redore
Access Control Group Servers		Available Servers:	
B Ada 0		Curlob 1 Ser	1
Adm 1	11	CutDb 10 Sev	
Adm 2		Db 11 Sev	
CustDb: 8 Srv	Click to add to t	he list. 10b 2 Srv	
CutDb 9 Stv		CudDb 3 Srv	
Engr 0		CustDb 4 Srv	
Engr_1		CustDb_5_Srv	
Eng_2	-	CustDb_6_Srv	
🚰 Eng_3		CustDb_7_Siv	
鲁Engr_4		Engr_7	
😤 Eng_5		HRSys_0	
Engr_6		HRSys_1	
Hard_0	lor i	HBSva 2	
Manf 1	Click	OK or Apply.	

Figure 57: Security Configurator, The Access Group Control Tab with Call Outs

- 3. Click the left arrow to add the server to the Access Control Group Servers list.
- 4. Click OK or Apply.

#### Deleting a Server from the ACG

To delete a server from the Access Control Group (ACG):

1. Start the HBAnyware Security Configurator.



2. On the Access Control Group tab, from the Access Control Group Servers list, select the secured systems that you want to delete from the ACG.

Remove Security	Generate New Keys		
Enable Switch Access		Australia Canana	Redore
Acct_2 Adm_0 Adm_1 Select Adm_2 7 CutOb_9_Siv Eng_0 Eng_1 Eng_2 Eng_3	Click to a	dd to the list. Carbb_10_Srv Carbb_10_Srv Carbb_10_Srv Carbb_11_Srv Carbb_2_Srv dd to the list. Carbb_5_Srv Carbb_5_Srv Carbb_6_Srv Carbb_6_Srv	
Eng_4 Eng_5 Eng_6 Manl_0	G	Eng_7 HRSys_0 HRSys_1 ick OK or Apply.	-

Figure 58: Security Configurator, The Access Group Control Tab with Call Outs

- 3. Click the **right arrow** to remove the servers from the Access Control Group Servers list.
- 4. Click OK or Apply.

#### Removing Security from all Servers in the ACG

You can remove security from all systems only from the Master Security Client (MSC). Removing the entire security topology on all of the servers in the MSC's ACG puts the servers in an unsecure state. The MSC is also put in an unsecure state; consequently, it is no longer the MSC. Any participating systems that are not online will not receive the 'remove security' configuration update, and as a result will no longer be accessible remotely.

To remove security from all servers in the ACG:



1. Start the HBAnyware Security Configurator. The Access Control Group tab is displayed.

Remove Security	Generate New Keys		
Enable Switch Access			Redore
coess Control Group Serve	182	Available Servers:	-
Acct_2 Adm_0	-	CustDb_0_Srv	-
Adm_1		CustDb_10_Srv	
CustDb_8_Srv		CustDb_2_Srv	
CustDb_9_Srv Eng_0		CutDb_3_Srv CutDb_4_Srv	
Eng_1	102	CulDb_5_Srv	
Eng_3		CustDb_6_Srv	
Engr_4		Eng_7	
B Engr_6		HRSys_1	
Hanl_D		HRSys_2	
Mant_1	-1	HHSys_3	

Figure 59: Security Configurator, Access Control Group Tab

2. On the Access Control Group tab, click the **Remove Security** button. The following message is displayed:

HBAnywa	are Security Configurator	đ
Ų	You are about to remove the security configuration. This means all HBAs will be available to be managed by any other system. This action will be immediate and cannot be reversed. Are you sure you want to do this.	;
	<u>Y</u> es No	

Figure 60: The HBAnyware Security Configurator "Warning" Dialog Box

3. Click Yes. Security is removed from all servers in the ACG.



#### **Generating New Security Keys**

You can generate new security keys only from a Master Security Client (MSC). After the new security keys are generated, they are automatically sent to all of the remote servers in the Access Control Group (ACG).

**Note:** All the servers that are part of the ACG must be online when this procedure is performed so that they may receive the new keys. Any servers that do not receive the new keys will no longer be accessible remotely.

To generate new security keys for all servers in the ACG:

1. From the MSC, start the HBAnyware Security Configurator. The Access Control Group tab is displayed.



Figure 61: Security Configurator, Access Control Group Tab

- 2. On the Access Control Group tab, click the **Generate New Keys** button. A dialog box warns you that you are about to generate new security keys for all systems.
- 3. Click Yes. The new keys are generated and sent to all of the remote servers in the ACG.


### Restoring the ACG to Its Last Saved Configuration

You can restore the ACG to its last saved configuration, if there are unsaved changes to the ACG, only from the Master Security Client (MSC).

To restore the ACG to its last saved configuration:

1. From the Access Control Group tab on the MSC, click the **Restore** button.

Remove Security	ienerate New Keys		
Enable Switch Access			Redore
Access Control Group Server	<u> </u>	Available Servers:	
Acct_2	*	CustDb_0_Srv	2
😤 Adm_0		CustDb_1_Srv	
Adm_1		CustDb_10_Srv	
Adm_2		CustDb_11_Srv	
CustDb_8_Srv		CustDb_2_Sty	
CustOb 9 Stv	100	Cut/Db 3 Stv	
Engr 0	-	CustDb 4 Siv	
Eng 1		CutDb 5 Sty	
Eng 2	1. 1. 1. 1. 1.	CutDh 6 Srv	
Eng 3		CurlDb 7 Sty	
Erra A		Erra 7	
E E E E E		HRSIN D	1.1
Contract Con		HIRS. I	
A New 1		LIPS	
Man_0		NPC- 2	
man_1	-1	HH HH SV0_3	100

Figure 62: Security Configurator, Access Control Group Tab

### Accessing a Switch

You can enable switch access only on a Master Security Client (MSC). Switch access grants the client access rights to a switch to remotely access HBAs on servers in the Access Control Group (ACG).

To enable switch access:

1. Start the HBAnyware Security Configurator.



2. From the Access Control Group tab, check **Enable Switch Access**.

Remove Security Gen	erate New Keys		
Enable Switch Access			Restore
Access Control Group Servers:		Available Servers:	-
Acct_2	*	CustDb_0_Srv	2
Adm_0	1.00	CustDb_1_Srv	
Adm_1	100	CustDb_10_Srv	
Adm_2		CustDb_11_Srv	
CustDb_6_Srv		CustDb_2_Srv	
CustOb 9 Stv	100	CutDb 3 Srv	
Eng_0	-	CustDb_4_Srv	
Eng_1		CustDb_5_Srv	
Eng_2		CustDb_6_Srv	
Eng 3		CustDb 7 Siv	
Engr 4		Engr.7	
Eng 5		HRSva 0	
Engt 6		HRSys_1	
Maril 0		HRSys 2	
Manf 1		HRSva 3	
A	-	Hadden B	

Figure 63: Security Configurator, Access Control Group Tab

### **Accessing Sub-Groups**

### Introduction

The Access Sub-Group tab allows you to create multiple Access Sub-Groups (ASGs) and multiple levels (tiers) in the security topology hierarchy. The hierarchy can be as many levels deep as desired. However, it is recommended the hierarchy extend no more than three levels deep, as it becomes increasingly difficult to keep track of the topology the deeper it goes. The hierarchy of ASGs is displayed in the Access Sub-Groups tab as a tree. You can create, modify and delete ASGs at each level in this tree.



Access Sub-Groups			
Engineering		New 1	
E Mari Sub 1			
Manf Sub 1.1		Edit	
- Mant Sub 2 - Sumont		Detro-1	
		_	
ccess Sub-Group Client Mari	0		Fiestgre
ccess Sub-Broup Client: Maril_ ccess Sub-Broup Servers	o	Available Servers	Restare
ccess Sub-Broup Client Mint_ ccess Sub-Broup Servers: Manl_1	o	Available Servers	Flestge
ccess Sub-Group Client Mint_ ccess Sub-Group Servers: Mani_1 Mani_2	o	walable Servers	
coess Sub-Group Client Mint_ coess Sub-Group Servers Mant_1 Mant_2 Mant_3		walable Servers	Restore
coss: Sub-Group Client: Minit_ coss: Sub-Group Servers: Mani_1 Mani_2 Mani_3 Mani_3 Mani_4		Walable Servers Acct_0 Acct_1 Acct_2 Acct_2 Acct_2 Adm_0	Restore
ccess Sub-Group Client: Mint_ ccess Sub-Group Servers Man[_1 Man[_2 Man[_3 Man[_4 Man[_5]		Available Servers Acct_0 Acct_1 Acct_2 Acct_2 Actr_0 Adm_1	Restate
ccess Sub-Broup Client Mint_ ccess Sub-Broup Servers Mant_1 Mant_2 Mant_2 Mant_3 Mant_4 Mant_5 Mant_5 Mant_6		Available Servers Acct_0 Acct_1 Acct_2 Acct_	Restate
coess Sub-Group Client Man(_ coess Sub-Group Servers Man(_1 Man(_2 Man(_3 Man(_3 Man(_4 Man(_6 Man(_6 Man(_7	• •	Walable Servers Acct_0 Acct_1 Acct_2 Adm_0 Adm_1 Adm_1 Coubb & Servers	Restore

Figure 64: Security Configurator, Access Sub-Groups Tab with Servers

### **ASG** Icons

The following icons indicate the state of each of the servers in the Access Sub-Group Servers list.



The system is a server in the ASG but not in any child ASGs. You can remove it from the ASG.



The system is a server in the ASG and at least one child ASG. You cannot remove it from the ASG until you remove it from the child ASGs.



The system is a server in the ASG and a client to a child ASG. You cannot remove it from the ASG until you remove it as a client from the child ASG (by either deleting or editing the child ASG).



The system is a server in the ASG, a server in at least one other child ASG and a client to a child ASG. You cannot remove it from the ASG until you remove it from the child ASGs and as a client from the child ASG (by either deleting or editing the child ASG).



The system is a server in the ASG and a client to a non-child ASG. You can remove it from the ASG.

The system is a server in the ASG, a server in at least one child ASG, and a client to a nonchild ASG. You cannot remove it from the ASG until you remove it from the child ASGs.

### **Creating an ASG**

You create a new Access Sub-Group (ASG) by selecting one system from the Access Control Group (ACG) to be the client, and some or all of the other systems to be servers to this client, thus defining the new client's ACG. When the HBAnyware Security Configurator is run on the new client, the displayed ACG shows the servers that were configured in the ASG by its parent client.



To create an ASG:

- 1. Start the HBAnyware Security Configurator.
- 2. Click the Access Sub-Groups tab.

		New	
0			
na an Tan Index Dents		Lesigner Lesigner	Freetown -
	Come 1		

Figure 65: Security Configurator, Access Control Group Tab (new)

3. Click **New**. The New Access Sub-Group dialog box is displayed.

New Access Sub-Group		×
Access Sub-Group Name (3	1 chars. max.):	
Manufacturing Group		
Access Sub-Group Client Sy	stem:	
Mani_0		*
Number of Indices reserved for this Access Sub-Group:		
25 +		
	0K.	Cancel

Figure 66: Security Configurator, New Access Sub-Group Window

- 4. Enter the ASG information:
  - Access Sub-Group Name: Enter the name of the ASG. The ASG name is for identification purposes only. It does not provide any security function. Provide a name that will make it easy to remember the systems that are part of the ASG. The name can contain any alphanumeric characters, symbols or spaces (up to 31). At each level of the security topology, each ASG name must be unique. If the name is not unique at its level, an error message informs you of this when you click **OK**.
  - Access Sub-Group Client System: Select the system that is to be the client.
  - Number of indices reserved for this Access Sub-Group: Select the number of 'indices' you want to reserve for the client system of the new ASG. This number reflects the number of subsequent 'child' ASGs that can subsequently be created on the new client's system. See the Reserved Indices topic (under Access Sub-Groups in this manual) for examples.
- 5. Click **OK** in the New Access Sub-Group dialog box. The ASG is created.



### **Reserved Indices - Examples**

A particular security installation can support the creation of several hundred access groups (ACGs and ASGs). When you create each new access group, you allocate some number of 'indices' to the client system of the new ASG. This number reflects the number of subsequent 'child' ASGs that can subsequently be created at the new client's system.

- If zero indices are reserved, you cannot create any lower-level ASG under the client of the new ASG. Thus, for example, if you want to implement a multi-tiered security architecture consisting of many ASGs, and you wanted to create them all from the Master Security Client (MSC), zero indices would be allocated to each of the new ASGs client platforms when they are created.
- If you create an ASG, and you reserve 25 indices for the new ASG client platform, a child ASG created by this platform will have a maximum of only 24 indices available to be reserved (one is taken by the creation of the child ASG itself). This continues down the ASG hierarchy as each lower level ASG is created.
- When you create an ASG from the MSC, a maximum of 50 indices (or less if fewer are available) can be reserved. For all other clients, the maximum depends on how many indices were reserved to that client when its ASG was created, and on how many it has subsequently allocated to its ASGs.

### Adding a Server to an ASG

To add a server to an ASG:

- 1. Start the HBAnyware Security Configurator.
- 2. Click the Access Sub-Group tab.

Entering the security Configuration		(	2
Access Carlos Ginago Access Sub-Diso	upe   Backup Klaster	New Edit	1
Access Sub-Group Clark Mark_0 Access Sub-Group Servers		Analide Serves Act_0 Act_1 Act_2 Act_2 Act_2 Act_2 CuOb_8,5v CuOb_8,5v	Better
	ÛK.	Cancel	Reb

Figure 67: Security Configurator, Access Sub-Groups Tab with Available Servers

- 3. The name of the ASG is displayed in the Access Sub-Groups tree. From the Available Servers list, select the servers to be added to the ASG.
- 4. Click the left arrow to move the servers to the Access Sub-Group Servers list.
- 5. Click **OK** or **Apply** to update servers, adding them to the ASG. The new client can remotely manage the HBAs on those servers using the HBAnyware utility.



### Deleting an ASG

Only a leaf node ASG may be deleted (i.e. not ASGs underneath it in the tree). If an ASG has at least one child ASG, those child ASGs must be deleted first.

To delete an ASG:

- 1. From the Access Sub-Group tree, select the leaf node ASG you wish to delete.
- 2. Click the **Delete** button. A dialog box appears warning you that if you continue the access subgroup will be deleted.
- 3. Click **Yes**. This operation is immediate. There is no need to click the **OK** or **Apply** button under the tab.

### **Restoring an ASG to Its Last Saved Configuration**

You can restore an Access Sub-Group (ASG) to its last saved configuration if there are unsaved changes to it.

To restore an ASG to its last saved configuration:

1. Click the Access Sub-Group tab.

Access Sub-Groups			
Engineering		New 1	
Manufacturing     Mary Sub 1		- mony	
Mant Sub 1.1		Edit	
Man/ Sub 2		Date:	
a alternative		and the factor	
		_	
cess Sub-Group Client Maril_0			Restore
ccess Sub-Group Client Maril_0		walable Servers	fiestae
ccess Sub-Group Client: Minit_0 ccess Sub-Group Servers Mant_1		walable Servers	- Flestare
coess Sub-Group Client Minil_0 coess Sub-Group Servers Minil_1 Minil_2 Minil_2		waliable Servers	: Flestore
ccess Sub-Group Client Minf_0 ccess Sub-Group Servers Manf_1 Manf_2 Manf_3 Manf_3		Walable Servers Acct_0 Acct_1 Acct_2 Acct_2	Restare
ccess Sub-Group Client Minil_0 ccess Sub-Group Servers Manil_1 Manil_2 Manil_3 Manil_4 Manil_4 Manil_5		walable Servers	Restare
coess Sub-Group Client Maril_0 coess Sub-Group Servers Maril_1 Maril_2 Maril_3 Maril_4 Maril_5 Maril_5 Maril 6	+	Acct_0 Acct_1 Acct_2 Acct_2 Acm_0 Adm_0 Adm_1 Adm_1 Adm_3	Flestore -
ccess Sub-Group Client Maril_O ccess Sub-Group Servers Maril_1 Maril_2 Maril_3 Maril_4 Maril_5 Maril_6 Maril_7		Acct_0 Acct_1 Acct_2 Acct_2 Acm_0 Acm_1 Acm_2 Couble 9 Sec	fiestore

Figure 68: Security Configurator, Access Sub-Groups Tab with Available Servers

- 2. Select the ASG whose configuration you want to restore.
- 3. Click Restore.
- 4. Click **OK** or **Apply** to save your changes.

### Editing an ASG

You can change the name, client system or reserved indices of an Access Sub-Group (ASG).

To edit an ASG:

1. Start the HBAnyware Security Configurator.



2. Click the Access Sub-Group tab.

Historyware Security Configurator	
Access Carlos (Souge: Access Sub-Groups:   Backup Maste Access Sub-Groups:  > Access Sub-Groups:  - Manufacture	New Eds Date
Access Sub-Group Clark   Mwl_0 Access Sub-Group Server:	Auslidie Servers
	Carcel 2000 7600

Figure 69: Security Configurator, Access Sub-Groups Tab with Available Servers

- 3. Select the ASG you want to edit.
- 4. Click Edit. The Edit Access Sub-Group dialog box is displayed.

Edit Access Sub Group	<u>. 89</u>			×
Access Sub-Group Nam	e (31 chars.	max.).		
Manufacturing				
Access Sub-Group Clien	t System:			
Manf_0			-	
Number of Indices reserv for this Access Sub-Grou	ved p:			
<u> </u>		OK	Cancel	L

Figure 70: Security Configurator, Edit Access Sub Group Dialog Box

- 5. Change the ASG information:
  - Access Sub-Group Name: Change the name of the ASG. The ASG name is for identification purposes only. It does not provide any security function. Provide a name that will make it easy to remember the systems that are part of the ASG. The name can contain any alphanumeric characters, symbols or spaces (up to 31). At each level of the security topology, each ASG name must be unique. If the name is not unique at its level, an error message informs you of this when you click **OK**.
  - Access Sub-Group Client System: Select the new system that is to be the client. If the Configurator is running on a system connected to more than one fabric, the client list contains only those systems that can be accessed by the original client of the ASG.



- Number of indices reserved for this Access Sub-Group: Select the new number of 'indices' you want to reserve for the client system of the new ASG. This number reflects the number of subsequent 'child' ASGs that can subsequently be created on the new client's system. See the Reserved Indices topic (under Access Sub-Groups in this manual) for examples.
- 6. Click **OK** in the Edit Access Sub-Group dialog box to save your changes.

### About Offline ASGs

Sometimes a client system may not be online when the HBAnyware Security Configurator is running. In this case, the Access Sub-Group (ASG) for the client appears offline in the ASG tree, much like the following:

E Access Sub-Groups			
Engineering		New	
Hanf Sub 1 Manf Sub 1.1		ECI	
Manif Sub 2 Support		Drien	
Access Sub Group (Jient) Access Sub Group Service	Avelate	Seven	fiedore

Figure 71: Security Configurator, Access Sub-Groups Tab with Offline Client

The offline ASG entry serves as a placeholder for where the real ASG would be in the tree. You cannot modify or delete the entry (although it is removed from the display if all of its child ASGs are deleted).

It is possible to delete the child ASGs of an offline ASG. However, it is recommended that you delete them only if the client for the offline ASG will never be put online again. It is best to delete child ASGs when the parent ASG is online.

If you choose to delete a child ASG, the operation is immediate. There is no need to click OK or Apply.

### **Backup Masters**

#### Introduction

A Backup Master mirrors the security data of the Master Security Client (MSC) in case it has to take over as the MSC if the MSC becomes unable to operate or is removed from the security configuration. A Backup master system receives all the updates to the security configuration on the MSC. However, you cannot make modifications to the security configuration on a Backup Master.



When the Configurator runs on a Backup Master, the Access Control Group tab looks like the tab on a non-MSC system. The Access Sub-Group tab displays the ASGs, but you cannot change the ASGs.

Remove Security 0	ienerate New Keys		
Enable Switch Access			Redore
Access Control Group Servers	£	Available Servers:	
Acct_2	*	CustDb_0_Srv	
曾 Adm_0	1.1	CustDb_1_Srv	
Adm_1		GustDb_10_Srv	
Adm_2		CustDb_11_Srv	
CustDb 8 Srv		CustDb 2 Stv	
CustOb 9 Stv	10 million	Cut/Db 3 Stv	
Engr 0	-	CustDb 4 Siv	
Eng 1		CutDb 5 Srv	
Eng 2		CustDb 6 Srv	
Eng 3		CualDh 7 Say	
Eng A		Eng 7	
Erra 5		HBSIE 0	- 1
Se Error 6		HBSur 1	
A Mart II		HIRSUS 2	
and Mark 1		HINDSHI 2	
an man_1	-	Hunove a	1

Figure 72: Security Configurator, Access Control Group Tab

The Backup Master tab is available only when the HBAnyware Security Configurator is running on the MSC or a Backup Master. Use this tab to set up a system as a Backup Master to the MSC and to replace the MSC with a Backup Master.

Each time the HBAnyware Security Configurator is started on the MSC and no Backup Master is assigned, a message warns you that no Backup Master Client is assigned to the security configuration.

If you run the HBAnyware Security Configurator on a Backup Master, a message warns you that you can only view security information on a Backup Master. Security changes must be made to the MSC.

Because a Backup Master system receives all the updates that the MSC makes to the security configuration, it is very important that the Backup Master is online when the HBAnyware Security Configurator is running on the MSC. Otherwise, updates to the security configuration are not reflected to the Backup Master. If the Backup Master then becomes the MSC, the security configuration may be corrupted.

### **Backup Master Eligible Systems**

In order to be eligible to become a Backup Master, a system must not be a client or server in any ASG. In other words, it must be either a server in the MSC's Access Control Group (ACG) or an unsecure system. If it is an unsecure system, it will be secure when it becomes a Backup Master.



### **Backup Master Tab and Controls**

The first time the Backup Master tab is selected on the MSC, it looks similar to the following:

E-EAsympte Security Configurator			×
Access Control Group   Access Sub-Groups	Backup Master	About	Destary
Anape New Hoster (Dect.)	-	Acc.1 Acc.1 Acc.2 Adu.1 Adu.1 Adu.2 CutCh_0.5w DutCh_1.5w DutCh_1.5w DutCh_1.5w DutCh_1.5w DutCh_1.5w DutCh_6.5w DutCh_6.5w DutCh_6.5w DutCh_6.5w	1
[	OK.	Cancel (397)	Hate

Figure 73: Security Configurator, Backup Master Tab (initial view)

### **Creating a Backup Master**

To create a Backup Master:

- 1. On the Master Security Client (MSC), start the HBAnyware Security Configurator.
- 2. Click the Backup Master tab.

HBAnyware Security Configurator		
Access Control Group   Access Sub-Groups   Backup   Backup Masters	tarrer   About   	Fierore ]
Actign New Master Client	Acet_0 Acet_1 Acet_2 Adm_0 CurDb_0_Siv CurDb_1_Siv CurDb_1_Siv CurDb_1_Siv CurDb_1_Siv CurDb_1_Siv CurDb_3_Siv CurDb_3_Siv CurDb_3_Siv	4
	Custob_5_Siv	1

Figure 74: Security Configurator, Backup Master Tab with Backup Master Selected

- 3. Select a system from the Available Systems list.
- 4. Click the left arrow to move the system to the Backup Masters list.
- 5. Click **OK** or **Apply** to save your changes.



### Reassigning a Backup Master as the New MSC from the Old MSC

Because a Backup Master may have to take over as the Master Security Client (MSC), it should be able to physically access all of the HBAs that the MSC can access. If the MSC is connected to multiple fabrics, its Backup Master should be selected from the Available Systems list that is connected to the same fabrics as the MSC.

To reassign a Backup Master as the new MSC from the old MSC:

- 1. On the MSC, start the HBAnyware Security Configurator.
- 2. Click the Backup Master tab.

cores Control Group   Access Sub-Groups   Backup Ma	aster   About	
	-	Fierore.
Adau_2	Acid_0 Acid_0 Acid_1 Acid_2 Acid_2 Acid_2 Acid_0 Curbb_0_Siv Curbb_1_Siv Curbb_1_Siv Curbb_1_Siv Curbb_1_Siv Curbb_2_Siv Curbb_2_Siv Curbb_5_Siv Curbb_5_Siv	4
	CurrOb_7_Siv	-

Figure 75: Security Configurator, Backup Master Tab with Backup Master Selected

- 3. In the Backup Masters list, select the Backup Master system that you want to reassign as the MSC.
- 4. Click Assign New Master Client. You will be asked if you wish to proceed.
- 5. Click **Yes**. The selected Backup Master becomes the new MSC. The current MSC becomes a server in the new MSC's ACG. After the changes are made, a message indicates that the reassignment is complete.
- 6. Click **OK**. The Configurator closes because the system is no longer the MSC.

### Reassigning a Backup Master as the New MSC from the Backup Master

WARNING: Use this method only if the MSC cannot relinquish control to a Backup Master. For example, if the MSC is no longer bootable or able to connect to the Fibre Channel network. Under any other circumstances, if the Backup Master takes over as the MSC, and the MSC is still running or comes back online later, there will be two MSCs for the same security configuration. This will eventually lead to corruption of the security configuration.

To reassign a Backup Master as the new MSC from the Backup Master:

1. On the Backup Master system that you want to reassign as the MSC, start the HBAnyware Security Configurator.



2. Click the Backup Master tab.



Figure 76: Security Configurator, Backup Master "Warning" Dialog Box

- 3. Click Assign This System As The Master Client. A prompt asks if you want to continue.
- 4. Click **Yes**. A prompt notifies you that this system is now the new MSC.
- 5. Click **OK**. The Configurator closes. Restart the HBAnyware Security Configurator to run the former Backup Master as the MSC.

# Troubleshooting

# Introduction

There are several circumstances in which your system may operate in an unexpected manner. The Troubleshooting section explains many of these circumstances and offers one or more workarounds for each situation.

# **Unusual Situations and Their Resolutions**

### **General Situations**

#### Table 4: General Situations

Situation	Resolution
When attempting to start HBAnyware the Web browser displays "Emulex Corporation HBAnyware Demo of HBAnyware WebStart web n.n.n.n"	<ul> <li>The document caching mechanism sometimes behaves erratically if more than one version of Java Runtime is installed on the browser client. There are two workarounds for this problem:</li> <li>Exit the browser and restart it. HBAnyware with Web launch should start successfully.</li> <li>Uninstall all non-essential versions of the Java Runtime. HBAnyware Web Launch services require that only a single version of the Java Runtime be installed on the browser client. This single version should be JRE version 1.5 or greater.</li> </ul>
<b>Operating Error Occurs When Attempting</b> <b>to Run HBAnyware.</b> When you attempt to run the HBAnyware utility, an operating system error may occur. The computer may freeze.	Reboot the system.
Cannot See Multiple Zones from the Management Server. Cannot see multiple zones on the same screen of my management server running the HBAnyware utility.	Provide a physical Fibre Channel connection into each of the zones. For each zone you want to see, connect an Emulex HBAnyware utility enabled port into that zone.



Situation	Resolution
Cannot See Other HBAs or Hosts. Although the HBAnyware utility is installed, only local host bus adapters (HBAs) are visible. The other HBAs and hosts in the SAN cannot be seen.	<ul> <li>The HBAnyware utility uses in-band data communication, meaning that the management server running the HBAnyware utility must have a physical Fibre Channel connection to the SAN. All the HBAs in the SAN will be visible if:</li> <li>The other servers have a Fibre Channel connection to your zone of the SAN. Check fabric zoning.</li> <li>Ensure that elxhbamgr processes are running on the remote host: enter ps -ef   grep elxhbamgr).</li> <li>All other HBAs are running the HBAnyware utility and the appropriate driver.</li> <li>The other HBAs are Emulex HBAs.</li> <li>Note: The HBAnyware utility must be running on all remote hosts that are to be discovered and managed. Remote capabilities of the HBAnyware utility are subject to fabric zoning configuration. Remote hosts to be discovered and managed by the HBAnyware utility must be in the same zone.</li> </ul>
SAN Management Workstation Does Not Have a Fibre Channel Connection. The SAN management workstation does not have a physical Fibre Channel connection into the SAN because the other management tools are all out-of-band. Can the HBAnyware utility be run on this SAN management workstation?	From the SAN management workstation, run a terminal emulation session into one of the servers that has the HBAnyware utility loaded on it. Open an X-Windows session to run the server's HBAnyware utility GUI remotely.
<b>Cannot See New LUNs</b> . Although new LUNs were created on the storage array, they do not appear in the HBAnyware utility.	Refresh the screen.
The HBAnyware Utility Appears on Remote Servers in the SAN.	<ul> <li>To prevent the HBAnyware utility from appearing on remote servers in the SAN, disable the elxhbamgr process:</li> <li>1. Navigate to /usr/sbin/hbanyware.</li> <li>2. Run ./stop_hbanyware to stop both the elxhbamgr and elxdiscovery processes.</li> <li>3. Run ./start_elxhbamgr and ./start_elxdiscovery to restart both processes.</li> <li>Disabling this service or process prevents the local servers from being seen remotely.</li> </ul>
The HBAnyware Security Configurator (Security Configurator) software package will not install. An error message states that the latest version of the HBAnyware utility must be installed first.	The system either has no HBAnyware software installed or has an older version of the HBAnyware software installed. In either case, obtain the latest version of the HBAnyware software and follow the installation instructions. Remember to install the HBAnyware software before installing the Security Configurator package.
Cannot access formerly accessible servers via the Security Configurator or the HBAnyware utility.	<ul> <li>This is actually a symptom of two different problems.</li> <li>New Keys Were Generated While Servers Were Offline</li> <li>Security Removed While Servers Were Offline</li> <li>See Table 9 on page 157 for details regarding these problems.</li> </ul>



### Table 4: General Situations (Continued)

Situation	Resolution
Cannot run the Security Configurator on a system that is configured for only secure access. I cannot run the Security Configurator on a system that is configured for only secure server access (it has no client privileges). The following message is displayed when the Security Configurator starts: "This system is not allowed client access to remote servers. This program will exit."	You cannot run the Security Configurator on a system that is configured for only secure server access. Click <b>OK</b> to close the message and the Configurator stops.

### Security Configurator Situations - Access Control Groups (ACG)

Situation	Resolution
All servers are not displayed. When I run the Security Configurator on the Master Security Client (MSC), I do not see all of the systems in available servers or ACG Servers lists. When I run the Security Configurator on a non-MSC, I do not see all of the systems I should see in the ACG Servers list.	Make sure all of the systems are connected to the Fibre Channel network and are online when you start the Configurator. Discovery of the systems is done only once, at startup. Unlike the HBAnyware utility, there is no Rediscover Devices button. Therefore, the Security Configurator must be restarted to rediscover new systems.
<b>Cannot add or remove a server.</b> The Security Configurator shows only a list of the systems in this system's ACG. I cannot add or remove systems from the ACG.	This is normal. You can modify the ACG for your system only on the MSC or on a parent client system.
HBAnyware utility shows non-ACG Servers. The HBAnyware utility shows servers that are part of the ACG and that are not part of the ACG.	The HBAnyware utility discovers unsecured servers as well as servers that are part of its ACG. The servers that you see that are not part of the ACG are unsecured. They will be discovered by any system running the HBAnyware utility on the same Fibre Channel fabric.

#### **Table 5: Access Control Groups Situations**

### Security Configuration Situations - Access Sub-Groups (ASG)

Situation	Resolution
ASG Appears to Be Non-Hierarchical. It is possible from a higher-level client (such as the MSC) to create an ASG 1 with system A as the client and systems B, C, D, and E as servers. Then create an ASG 2 with system E as the client, but with systems F and G as servers even though F and G are not part of ASG 1. This makes the topology non- hierarchical.	See "Non-Hierarchical and Hierarchical ASG" on page 158 for a discussion and a resolution to this situation.
Cannot add or remove a server.	When all of the systems in an ACG are running on a single fabric, they are all available to be added to any ASG. However, if the client is connected to more than one fabric, it is possible that not all of the servers in the client's ACG are physically accessible by a chosen client for an ASG. In this case, those servers are not available to be added to that ASG. If you add a system to an ASG as a server, and then make the system a client to a child ASG, you cannot remove it from the ACG it belongs to as a server until you delete the ASG to which it is a client. Before you delete a server from an ASG, you must first remove the server from any lower level ASGs to which it belongs.
In the ASG tree of the Access Sub-Groups tab, one or more of the names of the ASGs is displayed as "- ASG (Client Offline) -".	<ul> <li>The client system for the ASG was not discovered when the Configurator was started. This is actually a symptom of two different problems.</li> <li>All Servers Are Not Displayed</li> <li>New Keys Were Generated While Servers Were Offline See Table 9 on page 157 for details regarding these problems.</li> </ul>
Not All Servers are available to an ASG. When you create a new ASG or modify an existing ASG, not all of the servers in the ACG are available to be added to the ASG.	A client system can be connected to more than one fabric. While the system the Security Configurator is running on may be able to access all of the servers in its ACG, it is not necessarily the case that the selected client for the ASG can access all of the servers. Only those that can be accessed by the selected server will be available.

### Table 6: HBAnyware Security Configurator - Access Sub-Groups Situations

### HBAnyware Security Configurator Situations - Backup Masters

Situation	Resolution
Cannot create a backup master.	Select a system (or group of systems) from the MSC to be the Backup Master. The system must be either an unsecured system (which will be secured by being made a Backup Master), or a system that is not part of any ASG (client or server). These systems will mirror the MSC's security configuration. Because the Backup Master may some day take over as the MSC, the Backup Master must be able to physically access all of the systems that the MSC can access. Therefore, if the MSC is connected to multiple fabrics, the Backup Master also must be connected to those same fabrics. When you select a Backup Master, the HBAnyware Security Configurator displays a warning if it detects that the system selected to be a Backup Master is not able to physically access the same systems that the MSC can access
Cannot modify the Security Configurator.	Select a system (or group of systems) from the MSC to be the Backup Master. The system must be either an unsecured system (which will be secured by being made a Backup Master), or a system that is not part of any ASG (client or server). These systems will mirror the MSC's security configuration. The Backup Master has client access from the HBAnyware utility to all of the servers in the MSC's ACG. However, the Backup Master does not have client access to the MSC and it cannot modify the security configuration (create, modify or delete ASGs).
No Backup Master and the MSC Is no longer available. I do not have a Backup Master and the MSC system is no longer available. The servers are still secure. I installed the Security Configurator on another system, but I cannot access those servers to remove the security from them.	The servers are no longer part of a valid security configuration because there is no MSC to provide master control of the configuration. In order to reset the security on the affected servers, you must contact Emulex Technical Support to receive a special application and instructions on the reset procedure. After the servers have been reset, they should be seen by the Security Configurator and the HBAnyware utility. At this point, you can set up security again through another MSC. At this time, also create a Backup Master.
The Backup Master tab is not available.	The Backup Master tab is displayed only when the Security Configurator is running on the MSC or a Backup Master. You use this tab to set up a system or systems to be backups to the MSC and to replace the MSC with a Backup Master. Each time you start the Security Configurator on the MSC and there is no Backup Master assigned, a warning message urges you to assign at least one Backup Master to prevent the loss of security information if the MSC were to become disabled.

### Table 7: HBAnyware Security Configurator - Backup Masters Situations

### Error Message Situations

### Table 8: Error Message Situations

Situation	Resolution
The following error message is displayed when creating an ASG: "The Access Sub-Group name already exists. Please use a different name."	You entered a duplicate ASG name in the Access Sub- Group Name field. At each level of the security topology, each ASG name must be unique. Click <b>OK</b> on the message and enter a unique ASG name.
The following error message is displayed when deleting an ASG: "The Access Sub-Group parent's ASG is offline. You should delete the ASG when the parent ASG is available. This ASG should only be deleted if the parent ASG will not be available again. Are you sure you want to delete this ASG?"	The offline ASG entry serves as a placeholder for where the real ASG would be in the tree. You can neither modify nor delete it (although it is removed from the display if all of the child ASGs are deleted). It is possible to delete the child ASGs of the offline ASG. However, it is recommended that you delete them only if the client for the offline ASG will never be put online again. It is best to delete child ASGs when the parent ASG is online. Click <b>Yes</b> on the error message to delete the ASG or <b>No</b> to close the message without deleting.
The following error message is displayed when starting the HBAnyware Security Configurator: "This system is not allowed client access to remote servers. This program will exit."	<ul> <li>The system you are running the Security Configurator on is already under the security umbrella as a server to one or more clients. To make this server a client (so that it can successfully run the Security Configurator), click OK to close the message and exit the program, then do the following:</li> <li>1. Run the Security Configurator on the MSC or on any client that has this server in its ASG.</li> <li>2. Make this server a client to a group of servers.</li> </ul>
The following error message is displayed when starting the Security Configurator: "There are no Backup Master Client Systems assigned to this security configuration. At least one should be assigned to avoid loss of the security configuration should the Master Client System become disabled."	Use the Backup Master tab to assign a Backup Master for the MSC.
The first time the Security Configurator is started in an unsecure environment, the following message is displayed: "This utility is running on an unsecure system. Continuing will allow you to set up a new security configuration making this system the Master Client System."	Click <b>OK</b> on the message and complete the ACG setup. The system on which the Security Configurator is running will become the MSC.
When I start the Security Configurator on a Backup Master system, the following message is displayed: "Warning: This system is a backup master client system. Therefore you will only be able to view the security configuration. To make changes, you will need to run this utility on the master client system."	Because each Backup Master system receives all the updates that the MSC makes to the security configuration, the Backup Master systems must be online when the Security Configurator is running on the MSC. Otherwise, updates to the security configuration are not reflected to the Backup Master. If the Backup Master becomes the MSC, corruption of the security configuration may occur. Click <b>OK</b> to close the message.

### **Master Security Client Situations**

Situation	Resolution
The MSC is no longer bootable or able to connect to the FC network.	You must reassign a Backup Master as the new MSC from the Backup Master.
	Warning: Use this procedure only if the MSC cannot relinquish control to a Backup Master. For example, if the MSC is no longer bootable or able to connect to the FC network. Under any other circumstances, if the Backup Master takes over as the MSC and the MSC is still running or comes back online later, there will be two MSCs for the same security configuration. This will eventually lead to corruption of the security configuration.
New Keys Were Generated While Servers Were Offline. A "Generate New Keys" operation was performed while one or more of the servers were offline. Now those servers can no longer access the HBAnyware Security Configurator or the HBAnyware utility.	The servers are no longer part of the security configuration. In order to reset the security on the affected servers, you must contact Emulex Technical Support to receive a special application and instructions on the reset procedure. After the servers have been reset, they can be added back into the security topology by the MSC. <b>Note:</b> If the server was also a client to an ASG, then when you run the Security Configurator on the MSC or a parent client of this client, its label in the ASG tree of the Access Sub-Group tab will be "- ASG (Offline Client) -". You must delete the ASG (after deleting the child ASGs) and recreate the ASG configuration of this client and its child ASGs.
Security Removed While Servers Were Offline. Security was removed while one or more servers were offline. I can no longer access those servers from the Security Configurator or the HBAnyware utility.	The servers are no longer part of the security configuration. In order to reset the security on the affected servers, contact Emulex Technical Support to receive a special application and instructions on the reset procedure. After the servers have been reset, they should be seen by the Security Configurator or the HBAnyware utility.

### **Table 9: Master Security Client Situations**



### **Non-Hierarchical and Hierarchical ASG**

It is possible from a higher-level client (such as the MSC) to create an ASG 1 with system A as the client and systems B, C, D, and E as servers. Then create an ASG 2 with system E as the client, but with systems F and G as servers even though F and G are not part of ASG 1. This makes the topology non-hierarchical (see Figure 77).



#### Figure 77: Non-hierarchical ASG Scenario

System E is part of ASG 1, but has been made a client of ASG 2, and both of the servers in ASG 2 are not part of ASG 1. You could not create this ASG on system A, but you could on the MSC (or on a parent client) because it can access systems F and G. Although not shown in the picture, it is also possible to make system A a server in ASG 2, creating a case where system A and system E are both clients and servers to/of each other.

While the Security Configurator will allow you to set up ASGs this way, it is best not to create a topology like this as it can lead to confusion. The best way is to set up the ASG on the MSC (or a higher-level parent) where the clients and servers do not cross over into other ASGs. Then set up ASGs on clients of those ASGs in the same manner, keeping the topology hierarchical (see Figure 78)

### SEMULEX<sup>®</sup>



Figure 78: Hierarchical ASG Scenario

# **Ipfc Log Messages**

### Introduction

Log messages are organized into logical groups based on code functionality within the Fibre Channel driver. Each group consists of a block of 100 log message numbers. Most groups require a single block of 100 message numbers, however some groups (INIT, FCP) require two blocks.

The groups and the associated number ranges are defined in the Message Log table below. The preamble string shown in the Message Log table is displayed as part of the log message. The lower case 'x' of the preamble string defines the severity of the log message. The 'x' will be replaced by one of five lower case letters. Those letters are defined in the Severity Code table.

Log messages are logged to the /var/adm/messages system file.



### **Severity Codes**

Information and warning messages can be turned ON or OFF by setting/resetting the appropriate mask bit(s) in the variable 'log-verbose' located in the driver configuration module, lpfc.conf.c. By default, both information and warning messages are disabled. Configuration error (c), error (e), and panic (p) messages can not be disabled.

 Table 10: Severity Code Table

Code	Severity
i	Information
w	Warning
С	Configuration Error
е	Error
р	Panic

### Message Group Masks

Table 11 defines the log message groups and the associated number ranges.

- The preamble string shown in this table is displayed as part of the log message.
- The lower case 'x' of the preamble string defines the severity of the log message and represents one of five lower case letters defined in the severity codes table.

LOG Message Verbose Mask Definition	Preamble String	From	То	Verbose Bit	Verbose Description
ELS	ELx	0100	0199	LOG_ELS (0x1)	ELS events
DISCOVERY	DIx	0200	0299	LOG_DISCOVERY (0x2)	Link discovery events
MBOX	MBx	0300	0399	LOG_MBOX (0x4)	Mailbox events
SLI	SLx	0300	0399	LOG_SLI (0x800)	SLI events
INIT	INx	0400 0500	0499 0599	LOG_INIT (0x8)	Initialization events
IP	IPx	0600	0699	LOG_IP (0x20)	IP traffic history
FCP	FPx	0700 0800	0799 0899	LOG_FCP (0x40)	FCP traffic history
NODE	NDx	0900	0999	LOG_NODE (0x80)	Node table events
Reserved		1000	1099	Reserved	Reserved
Reserved		1100	1199	Reserved	Reserved

#### Table 11: Message Log Table



#### Table 11: Message Log Table (Continued)

LOG Message Verbose Mask Definition	Preamble String	From	То	Verbose Bit	Verbose Description
MISC	MIx	1200	1299	LOG_MISC (0x400)	Miscellaneous events
LINK	LKx	1300	1399	LOG_LINK_EVENT (0x10)	Link events
Reserved		1400	1499	Reserved	Reserved
Reserved		1500	1599	Reserved	Reserved
IOCTL	IOx	1600	1699	LOG_IOC (0x2000)	IOCTL events
All Messages				LOG_ALL_MSG (0x1fff)	Log all messages

### Message Log Example

The following is an example of a LOG message:

```
Jul 12 16:30:26 <node> kernel: !lpfc0:0234:DIi:Device Discovery completes
```

In the above LOG message:

- Ipfc0 identifies the LOG message as coming from EMULEX HBA0.
- 0234 identifies the LOG message number.
- Dli identifies the LOG message as a DISCOVERY (DI) INFORMATION (i) message.

**Note:** If the word 'Data:' is present in a LOG message, any information to the right of 'Data:' is intended for Emulex technical support/engineering use only.

### ELS Events (0100 - 0199)

0100 ELi: FLOGI failure

DESCRIPTION: An ELS FLOGI command that was sent to the fabric failed. DATA: (1) ulpStatus (2) ulpWord[4] SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_ELS Verbose ACTION: No action needed, informational.

0101 ELi: FLOGI completes successfully

DESCRIPTION: An ELS FLOGI command that was sent to the fabric succeeded. DATA: (1) ulpWord[4] (2) e\_d\_tov (3) r\_a\_tov (4) edtovResolution SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_ELS Verbose ACTION: No action needed, informational.



0102 ELi: PLOGI completes to NPort <nlp\_DID>

DESCRIPTION: The HBA performed a PLOGI into a remote NPort. DATA: (1) ulpStatus (2) ulpWord[4] (3) disc (4) num\_disc\_nodes SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_ELS Verbose ACTION: No action needed, informational.

0103 ELi: PRLI completes to NPort <nlp\_DID>

DESCRIPTION: The HBA performed a PRLI into a remote NPort. DATA: ((1) ulpStatus (2) ulpWord[4] (3) num\_disc\_nodes SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_ELS Verbose ACTION: No action needed, informational.

0104 ELi: ADISC completes to NPort <nlp\_DID>

DESCRIPTION: The HBA performed a ADISC into a remote NPort. DATA: (1) ulpStatus (2) ulpWord[4] (3) disc (4) num\_disc\_nodes SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_ELS Verbose ACTION: No action needed, informational.

0105 ELi: LOGO completes to NPort <nlp\_DID>

DESCRIPTION: The HBA performed a LOGO to a remote NPort. DATA: (1) ulpStatus (2) ulpWord[4] (3) num\_disc\_nodes SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_ELS Verbose ACTION: No action needed, informational.

0106 ELi: ELS cmd tag <ulploTag> completes

DESCRIPTION: The specific ELS command was completed by the firmware. DATA: (1) ulpStatus (2) ulpWord[4] SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_ELS Verbose ACTION: No action needed, informational.

0107 ELi: Retry ELS command <elsCmd> to remote NPORT <did>

DESCRIPTION: The driver is retrying the specific ELS command. DATA: ((1) retry (2) delay SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_ELS Verbose ACTION: No action needed, informational.

0108 ELi: No retry ELS command <elsCmd> to remote NPORT <did>

DESCRIPTION: The driver decided not to retry the specific ELS command that failed. DATA: (1) retry (2) nlp\_flag SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_ELS Verbose ACTION: No action needed, informational.

### 🔀 EMULEX<sup>°</sup>

0109 ELi: ACC to LOGO completes to NPort <nlp\_DID>

DESCRIPTION: The driver received a LOGO from a remote NPort and successfully issued an ACC response. DATA: (1) nlp\_flag (2) nlp\_state (3) nlp\_rpi SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_ELS Verbose ACTION: No action needed, informational.

0110 ELi: ELS response tag <ulploTag> completes

DESCRIPTION: The specific ELS response was completed by the firmware. DATA: (1) ulpStatus (2) ulpWord[4] (3) nlp\_DID (4) nlp\_flag (5) nlp\_state (6) nle.nlp\_rpi SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_ELS Verbose ACTION: No action needed, informational.

0111 ELe: Dropping received ELS cmd

DESCRIP TION: The driver decided to drop an ELS Response ring entry. DATA: (1) ulpStatus (2) ulpWord[4] SEVERITY: Error LOG: Always ACTION: This error could indicate a software driver or firmware problem. If problems persist report these errors to Technical Support.

0112 ELi: ELS command <elsCmd> received from NPORT <did>

DESCRIPTION: Received the specific ELS command from a remote NPort. DATA: (1) fc\_ffstate SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_ELS Verbose MODULE: fcelsb.c ACTION: No action needed, informational.

0113 ELe: An FLOGI ELS command <elsCmd> was received from DID <did> in Loop Mode

DESCRIPTION: While in Loop Mode an unknown or unsupported ELS command was received. DATA: None SEVERITY: Error LOG: Always ACTION: Check device DID

0114 ELi: FLOGI/PLOGI chkparm OK

DESCRIPTION: Received a FLOGI/PLOGI from a remote NPORT and its Fibre Channel service parameters match this HBA. Request can be accepted. DATA: (1) nlp\_DID (2) nlp\_state (3) nlp\_flag (4) nlp\_Rpi SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_ELS Verbose ACTION: No action needed, informational.



0115 ELe: Unknown ELS command <elsCmd> received from NPORT <did>

DESCRIPTION: Received an unsupported ELS command from a remote NPORT. DATA: None SEVERITY: Error LOG: Always ACTION: Check remote NPORT for potential problem.

0116 ELi: Xmit ELS command <elsCmd> to remote NPORT <did>

DESCRIPTION: Xmit ELS command to remote NPORT. DATA: (1) icmd->ulploTag (2) binfo->fc\_ffstate SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_ELS Verbose ACTION: No action needed, informational.

0117 ELi: Xmit ELS response <elsCmd> to remote NPORT <did>

DESCRIPTION: Xmit ELS response to remote NPORT. DATA: (1) icmd->ulploTag (2) size SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_ELS Verbose MODULE: fcelsb.c ACTION: No action needed, informational.

0118 ELi: Xmit CT response on exchange <xid>

DESCRIPTION: Xmit a CT response on the appropriate exchange. DATA: (1) ulploTag (2) fc\_ffstate SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_ELS Verbose ACTION: No action needed, informational.

0119 ELi: Issue GEN REQ IOCB for NPORT <did>

DESCRIPTION: Issue a GEN REQ IOCB for remote NPORT. These are typically used for CT request. DATA: (1) ulpIoTag (2) fc\_ffstate SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_ELS Verbose ACTION: No action needed, informational.

0127 ELe: ELS timeout

DESCRIPTION: An ELS IOCB command was posted to a ring and did not complete within ULP timeout seconds. DATA: (1) elscmd (2) did (3) ulpcommand (4) iotag SEVERITY: Error LOG: Always ACTION: If no ELS command is going through the adapter, reboot the system; If problem persists, contact Technical Support.

### Link Discovery Events (0200 - 0299)

0200 DIe: CONFIG\_LINK bad hba state <hba\_state>

DESCRIPTION: A CONFIG\_LINK mbox command completed and the driver was not in the right state. DATA: None SEVERITY: Error LOG: Always ACTION: Software driver error. If this problem persists, report these errors to Technical Support.

0201 DIi: Abort outstanding I/O on NPort <nlp\_DID>

DESCRIPTION: All outstanding I/Os are cleaned up on the specified remote NPort. DATA: (1) nlp\_flag (2) nlp\_state (3) nle.nlp\_rpi SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_DISCOVERY Verbose ACTION: No action needed, informational.

0202 DIi: Start Discovery hba state <hba\_state>

DESCRIPTION: Device discovery / rediscovery after FLOGI, FAN or RSCN has started. DATA: (1) tmo (2) fc\_plogi\_cnt (3) fc\_adisc\_cnt SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_DISCOVERY Verbose ACTION: No action needed, informational.

0203 DIe: Nodev timeout on NPort <nlp\_DID>

DESCRIPTION: A remote NPort the was discovered by the driver disappeared for more than ELX\_NODEV\_TMO seconds. DATA: (1) nlp\_flag (2) nlp\_state (3) nlp\_rpi SEVERITY: Error LOG: Always ACTION: Check connections to Fabric / HUB or remote device.

0204 Dli: Create SCSI Target <tgt>

DESCRIPTION: A mapped FCP target was discovered and the driver has allocated resources for it. DATA: None SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_DISCOVERY | LOG\_FCP Verbose ACTION: No action needed, informational.

0205 DIi: Create SCSI LUN <lun> on Target <tgt>

DESCRIPTION: A LUN on a mapped FCP target was discovered and the driver has allocated resources for it. DATA: None SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_DISCOVERY | LOG\_FCP Verbose ACTION: No action needed, informational.



0206 DIi: Report Lun completes on NPort <nlp\_DID>

DESCRIPTION: The driver issued a REPORT\_LUN SCSI command to a FCP target and it completed. DATA: (1) ulpStatus (2) rspStatus2 (3) rspStatus3 (4) nlp\_failMask SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_DISCOVERY | LOG\_FCP Verbose ACTION: No action needed, informational.

0207 DIi: Issue Report LUN on NPort <nlp\_DID>

DESCRIPTION: The driver issued a REPORT\_LUN SCSI command to a FCP target. DATA: (1) nlp\_failMask (2) nlp\_state (3) nlp\_rpi SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_DISCOVERY | LOG\_FCP Verbose No action needed, informational.

0208 DIi: Failmask change on NPort <nlp\_DID>

DESCRIPTION: An event was processed that indicates the driver may not be able to communicate with the remote NPort. DATA: (1) nlp\_failMask (2) bitmask (3) flag SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_DISCOVERY Verbose ACTION: No action needed, informational.

0209 DIi: RFT request completes ulpStatus <ulpStatus> CmdRsp <CmdRsp>

DESCRIPTION: A RFT request that was sent to the fabric completed. DATA: (1) nlp\_failMask (2) bitmask (3) flag SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_DISCOVERY Verbose ACTION: No action needed, informational.

0210 DIi: Continue discovery with <num\_disc\_nodes> ADISCs to go

DESCRIPTION: A device discovery is in progress. DATA: (1) fc\_adisc\_cnt (2) fc\_flag (3) phba->hba\_state SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_DISCOVERY Verbose ACTION: No action needed, informational.

0211 DIi: DSM in event <evt> on NPort <nlp\_DID> in state <cur\_state>

DESCRIPTION: The driver Discovery State Machine is processing an event. DATA: (1) nlp\_flag SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_DISCOVERY Verbose ACTION: No action needed, informational.

0212 DIi: DSM out state <rc> on NPort <nlp\_DID>

DESCRIPTION: The driver Discovery State Machine completed processing an event. DATA: (1) nlp\_flag SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_DISCOVERY Verbose ACTION: No action needed, informational.



0213 DIi: Reassign scsi id <sid> to NPort <nlp\_DID>

DESCRIPTION: A previously bound FCP Target has been rediscovered and reassigned a scsi id. DATA: (1) nlp\_bind\_type (2) nlp\_flag (3) nlp\_state (4) nlp\_rpi SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_DISCOVERY | LOG\_FCP Verbose ACTION: No action needed, informational.

0214 DIi: RSCN received

DESCRIPTION: An RSCN ELS command was received from a fabric. DATA: (1) fc\_flag (2) i (3) \*lp (4) fc\_rscn\_id\_cnt SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_DISCOVERY Verbose ACTION: No action needed, informational.

0215 Dli: RSCN processed

DESCRIPTION: An RSCN ELS command was received from a fabric and processed. DATA: (1) fc\_flag (2) cnt (3) fc\_rscn\_id\_cnt (4) fc\_ffstate SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_DISCOVERY Verbose ACTION: No action needed, informational.

0216 DIi: Assign scandown scsi id <sid> to NPort <nlp\_DID>

DESCRIPTION: A scsi id is assigned due to BIND\_ALPA. DATA: ((1) nlp\_bind\_type (2) nlp\_flag (3) nlp\_state (4) nlp\_rpi SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_DISCOVERY | LOG\_FCP Verbose ACTION: No action needed, informational.

0217 DIe: Unknown Identifier in RSCN payload

DESCRIPTION: Typically the identifier in the RSCN payload specifies a domain, area or a specific NportID. If neither of these are specified, a warning will be recorded. DATA: (1) didp->un.word SEVERITY: Error LOG: Always ACTION: Potential problem with Fabric. Check with Fabric vendor.

0218 Dli: FDMI Request

DESCRIPTION: The driver is sending an FDMI request to the fabric. DATA: (1) fc\_flag (2) hba\_state (3) cmdcode SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_DISCOVERY Verbose ACTION: No action needed, informational.

0219 Dli: Issue FDMI request failed

DESCRIPTION: Cannot issue FDMI request to HBA. DATA: (1) cmdcode SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_DISCOVERY Verbose ACTION: No action needed, informational.



0220 Dli: FDMI rsp failed

DESCRIPTION: An error response was received to FDMI request. DATA:(1) SWAP\_DATA16 (fdmi\_cmd) SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_DISCOVERY Verbose ACTION: The fabric does not support FDMI, check fabric configuration.

0221 Dlw: FAN timeout

DESCRIPTION: A link up event was received without the login bit set, so the driver waits E\_D\_TOV for the Fabric to send a FAN. If no FAN if received, a FLOGI will be sent after the timeout. DATA: None SEVERITY: Warning LOG: LOG\_DISCOVERY Verbose ACTION: None required. The driver recovers from this condition by issuing a FLOGI to the fabric.

0222 DIe: Initial FLOGI timeout

DESCRIPTION: The driver sent the initial FLOGI to fabric and never got a response back. DATA: None SEVERITY: Error LOG: Always ACTION: Check Fabric configuration. The driver recovers from this and continues with device discovery.

0223 DIe: Timeout while waiting for NameServer login

DESCRIPTION: Our login request to the NameServer was not acknowledged within RATOV. DATA: None SEVERITY: Error LOG: Always ACTION: Check the fabric configuration. The driver recovers from this and continues with device discovery.

0224 DIe: NameServer Query timeout

DESCRIPTION: Node authentication timeout, node Discovery timeout. A NameServer Query to the Fabric or discovery of reported remote NPorts is not acknowledged within R\_A\_TOV. DATA: (1) fc\_ns\_retry (2) fc\_max\_ns\_retry SEVERITY: Error LOG: Always ACTION: Check Fabric configuration. The driver recovers from this and continues with device discovery.

0225 Dli: Device Discovery completes

DESCRIPTION: This indicates successful completion of device (re)discovery after a link up. DATA: None SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_DISCOVERY Verbose ACTION: No action needed, informational.



0226 DIe: Device discovery completion error

DESCRIPTION: This indicates that an uncorrectable error was encountered during device (re)discovery after a link up. Fibre Channel devices will not be accessible if this message is displayed. DATA: None SEVERITY: Error LOG: Always ACTION: Reboot the system. If the problem persists, report the error to Technical Support. Run with Verbose mode on for more details.

0227 DIe: Node Authentication timeout

DESCRIPTION: The driver has lost track of what NPORTs are being authenticated. DATA: None SEVERITY: Error LOG: Always ACTION: None required. The driver should recover from this event.

0228 DIe: CLEAR LA timeout

DESCRIPTION: The driver issued a CLEAR\_LA that never completed. DATA: None SEVERITY: Error LOG: Always ACTION: None required. The driver should recover from this event.

0229 DIi: Assign scsi ID <sid> to NPort <nlp\_DID>

DESCRIPTION: The driver assigned a scsi id to a discovered mapped FCP target. DATA: (1) nlp\_bind\_type (2) nlp\_flag (3) nlp\_state (4) nlp\_rpi SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_DISCOVERY | LOG\_FCP Verbose ACTION: No action needed, informational.

0230 DIi: Cannot assign scsi ID on NPort <nlp\_DID>

DESCRIPTION: The driver cannot assign a scsi id to a discovered mapped FCP target. DATA: (1) nlp\_flag (2) nlp\_state (3) nlp\_rpi SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_DISCOVERY | LOG\_FCP Verbose ACTION: Check persistent binding information.

0231 DIe: RSCN timeout

DESCRIPTION: The driver has lost track of what NPORTs have RSCNs pending. DATA: (1) fc\_ns\_retry (2) fc\_max\_ns\_retry SEVERITY: Error LOG: Always ACTION: None required. The driver should recover from this event.



0232 DIi: Continue discovery with <num\_disc\_nodes> PLOGIs to go

DESCRIPTION: Device discovery is in progress. DATA: (1) fc\_plogi\_cnt (2) fc\_flag (3) phba->hba\_state SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_DISCOVERY Verbose ACTION: No action needed, informational.

0234 DIi: ReDiscovery RSCN

DESCRIPTION: The number / type of RSCNs has forced the driver to go to the nameserver and rediscover all NPORTs. DATA: (1) fc\_defer\_rscn.q\_cnt (2) fc\_flag (3) hba\_state SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_DISCOVERY Verbose ACTION: No action needed, informational.

0235 DIi: Deferred RSCN

DESCRIPTION: The driver has received multiple RSCNs and has deferred the processing of the most recent RSCN. DATA: (1) fc\_defer\_rscn.q\_cnt (2) fc\_flag (3) hba\_state SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_DISCOVERY Verbose ACTION: No action needed, informational.

0236 Dli: NameServer req

DESCRIPTION: The driver is issuing a NameServer request to the fabric. DATA: (1) cmdcode (2) fc\_flag (3) fc\_rscn\_id\_cnt SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_DISCOVERY Verbose ACTION: No action needed, informational.

0237 DIw: Pending Link Event during Discovery

DESCRIPTION: Received link event during discovery. Causes discovery restart. DATA: (1) hba\_state SEVERITY: Warning LOG: LOG\_DISCOVERY Verbose ACTION: None required unless problem persists. If problem persists, check cabling.

0238 Dli: NameServer Rsp

DESCRIPTION: The driver received a NameServer response. DATA: (1) Did (2) nlp\_flag (3) fc\_flag (4) fc\_rscn\_id\_cnt SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_DISCOVERY Verbose ACTION: No action needed, informational.



0240 DIi: NameServer Rsp Error

DESCRIPTION: The driver received a NameServer response containing a status error. DATA: (1) CommandResponse.bits.CmdRsp (2) ReasonCode (3) Explanation (4) fc\_flag SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_DISCOVERY Verbose ACTION: Check the fabric configuration. The driver recovers from this and continues with device discovery.

0241 Dli: NameServer rsp error

DESCRIPTION: The driver received a NameServer response containing a status error. DATA: (1) CommandResponse.bits.CmdRsp (2) ReasonCode (3) Explanation (4) fc\_flag SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_DISCOVERY Verbose ACTION: Check the fabric configuration. The driver recovers from this and continues with device discovery.

0242 DIi: Failmask change on TGT <target\_ID> LUN <lun\_ID>

DESCRIPTION: An event was processed that indicates the driver may not be able to send I/O to the specified LUN. DATA: (1) nlp\_failMask (2) bitmask (3) flag SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_DISCOVERY Verbose ACTION: No action needed, information.

0243 Dli: Issue FDMI request failed

DESCRIPTION: Cannot issue an FDMI request to HBA. DATA: (1) cmdcode SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_DISCOVERY Verbose ACTION: No action needed, informational.

0244 Dli: Issue FDMI request failed

DESCRIPTION: Cannot issue an FDMI request to the HBA. DATA: (1) cmdcode SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_Discovery Verbose ACTION: No action needed, informational.

0245 DIw: ALPA based bind method used on an HBA which is in a nonloop topology

DESCRIPTION: ALPA-based bind method used on an HBA which is not in a loop topology. DATA: (1) topology SEVERITY: Warning LOG: LOG\_DISCOVERY Verbose ACTION: Change the bind method configuration parameter of the HBA to 1(WWNN) or 2(WWPN) or 3(DID)



0246 DIe: RegLogin failed

DESCRIPTION: The firmware returned a failure for the specified RegLogin. DATA: Did, mbxStatus, hbaState SEVERITY: Error LOG: Always MODULE: fcscsib.c ACTION: This message indicates that the firmware could not do RegLogin for the specified Did. There may be a limitation on how many nodes an HBA can see.

0247 DIi: Start Discovery Timer state <hba\_state>

DESCRIPTION: Start the device discovery / RSCN rescue timer. DATA: (1) tmo (2) disctmo (3) fc\_plogi\_cnt (4) fc\_adisc\_cnt SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_DISCOVERY Verbose ACTION: No action needed, informational.

0248 DIi: Cancel Discovery Timer state <hba\_state>

DESCRIPTION: Cancel the device discovery / RSCN rescue timer. DATA: (1) fc\_flag (2) rc (3) fc\_plogi\_cnt (4) fc\_adisc\_cnt SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_DISCOVERY Verbose ACTION:No action needed, informational.

0249 DIi: Start nodev Timer

DESCRIPTION: A device disappeared form the FC network. If the device does not return within the nodevtmo timeout, all I/O to the device will fail. DATA: (1) nlp\_DID (2) nlp\_flag (3) nlp\_state (4) nlp SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_DISCOVERY Verbose ACTION:No action needed, informational.

### Mailbox Events (0300 - 0399)

0300 MBw: READ\_LA: no buffers

DESCRIPTION: The driver attempted to issue a READ\_LA mailbox command to the HBA, but there were no buffers available. DATA: None SEVERITY: Warning LOG: LOG\_MBOX Verbose ACTION: This message indicates: (1) a possible lack of memory resources. Try increasing the lpfc 'num\_bufs' configuration parameter to allocate more buffers. (2) A possble driver buffer management problem. If this problem persists, report the error to Technical Support.



0301 MBw: READ\_SPARAM: no buffers

DESCRIPTION: The driver attempted to issue a READ\_SPARAM mailbox command to the HBA, but there were no buffers available. DATA: None SEVERITY: Warning LOG: LOG\_MBOX Verbose ACTION: This message indicates: (1) a possible lack of memory resources. Try increasing the lpfc 'num\_bufs' configuration parameter to allocate more buffers. (2) A possble driver buffer management problem. If the problem persists, report the error to Technical Support.

#### 0302 MBw: REG\_LOGIN: no buffers

DESCRIPTION: The driver attempted to issue a REG\_LOGIN mailbox command to the HBA, but there were no buffers available. DATA: None SEVERITY: Warning LOG: LOG\_MBOX Verbose ACTION: This message indicates: (1) a possible lack of memory resources. Try increasing the lpfc 'num\_bufs' configuration parameter to allocate more buffers. (2) A possible driver buffer management problem. If the problem persists, report the error to Technical Support.

0303 INe: Adapter initialization error, mbxCmd <cmd> READ\_NVPARM, mbxStatus <status>

DESCRIPTION: A mailbox command failed during initialization. DATA: None SEVERITY: Error LOG: Always ACTION: This error could indicate a hardware or firmware problem. If the problem persists, report the error to Technical Support.

0304 MBe: Stray mailbox interrupt, mbxCommand <cmd> mbxStatus <status>

DESCRIPTION: Received a mailbox completion interrupt and there are no outstanding mailbox commands. DATA: None SEVERITY: Error LOG: Always ACTION: This error could indicate a hardware or firmware problem. If the problem persists, report the error to Technical Support.

0305 MBi: Mbox cmd cmpl error - RETRYing

DESCRIPTION: A mailbox command completed with an error status that causes the driver to reissue the mailbox command. DATA: (1) mbxCommand (2) mbxStatus (3) word1 (4) hba\_state SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_MBOX Verbose ACTION: No action needed, informational.


0306 MBe: CONFIG\_LINK mbxStatus error <mbxStatus> HBA state <hba\_state>

DESCRIPTION: The driver issued a CONFIG\_LINK mbox command to the HBA that failed. DATA: None SEVERITY: Error LOG: Always ACTION: This error could indicate a firmware or hardware problem. Report these errors to Technical Support.

0307 MBi: Mailbox Cmpl, wd0 <pmbox> wd1 <varWord> wd2 <varWord> cmpl <mbox\_cmpl)

DESCRIPTION: A mailbox command completed. DATA: None SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_MBOX Verbose ACTION: No action needed, informational.

0308 MBi: Mbox cmd issue - BUSY

DESCRIPTION: The driver attempted to issue a mailbox command while the mailbox was busy processing the previous command. The processing of the new command will be deferred until the mailbox becomes available. DATA: (1) mbxCommand (2) hba\_state (3) sli\_flag (4) flag SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_MBOX Verbose ACTION: No action needed, informational.

0309 MBi: Mailbox cmd <cmd> issue

DESCRIPTION: The driver is in the process of issuing a mailbox command. DATA: (1) hba\_state (2) sli\_flag (3) flag SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_MBOX Verbose ACTION: No action needed, informational.

0310 MBe: Mailbox command <cmd> timeout

DESCRIPTION: A mailbox command was posted to the adapter and did not complete within 30 seconds. DATA: (1) hba\_state (2) sli\_flag (3) mbox\_active SEVERITY: Error LOG: Always ACTION: This error could indicate a software driver or firmware problem. If no I/O is going through the adapter, reboot the system. If the problem persists, report the error to Technical Support.

0311 MBi: Mailbox command <cmd> cannot issue

DESCRIPTION: The driver is in the wrong state to issue the specified command. DATA: (1) hba\_state (2) sli\_flag (3) flag SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_MBOX Verbose MODULE: fcscsib.c ACTION: No action needed, informational.



0312 SLe: Ring <ringno> handler: portRspPut <portRspPut> is bigger then rsp ring <portR-spMax>

DESCRIPTION: The port rsp ring put index is larger than the size of the rsp ring. DATA: None SEVERITY: Error LOG: Always ACTION: This error could indicate a software driver, firmware or hardware problem. Report these errors to Technical Support.

0313 SLw: Ring <ringno> handler: unexpected Rctl <Rctl> Type <Type> received

DESCRIPTION: The Rctl/Type of a received frame did not match any for the configured masks for the specified ring. DATA: None SEVERITY: Warning LOG: Always ACTION: This warning could indicate a software driver, firmware or hardware problem. Report these errors to Technical Support.

0314 SLe: Ring <ringno> issue: portCmdGet <portCmdGet> is bigger then cmd ring <portCmdMax>

DESCRIPTION: The port cmd ring get index is greater than the size of cmd ring. DATA: None SEVERITY: Error LOG: Always ACTION: This error could indicate a software driver, firmware or hardware problem. Report these errors to Technical Support.

0315 SLe: Ring <ringno> issue: portCmdGet <portCmdGet> is bigger then cmd ring <portCmdMax>

DESCRIPTION: The port cmd ring get index is greater than the size of cmd ring. DATA: None SEVERITY: Error LOG: Always ACTION: This error could indicate a software driver, firmware or hardware problem. Report these errors to Technical Support.

0316 SLe: Cmd ring <ringno> put: iotag <iotag> greater then configured max <fast\_iotag> wd0 <icmd>

DESCRIPTION: The assigned I/O iotag is greater than the allowed maximum. DATA: None SEVERITY: Error LOG: Always ACTION: This error could indicate a software driver, firmware or hardware problem. Report these errors to Technical Support. 0317 SLe: Rsp ring <ringno> get: iotag <iotag> greater then configured max <fast\_iotag> wd0 <irsp>

DESCRIPTION: The assigned I/O iotag is greater than the maximum allowed. DATA: None SEVERITY: Error LOG: Always ACTION: This error could indicate a software driver, firmware or hardware problem. Report these errors to Technical Support.

0318 SLi: Outstanding I/O count for ring <ringno> is at max <fast\_iotag>

DESCRIPTION: An I/O tag cannot be assigned because none are available. The maximum number of allowed I/Os are currently outstanding. DATA: None SEVERITY: Information LOG:LOG\_SLI Verbose ACTION: This message indicates the adapter HBA I/O queue is full. Typically this happens when heavy I/ O is running on a low-end (3 digit) adapter. We suggest you upgrade to a high-end adapter.

0319 MBe: The driver issued a READ\_SPARAM mbox command to the HBA that failed.

DESCRIPTION: The driver issued a READ\_SPARAM mbox command to the HBA that failed. DATA: None SEVERITY: Error LOG: Always ACTION: This error could indicate a firmware or hardware problem. Report these errors to Technical Support.

0320 MBe: CLEAR\_LA mbxStatus error <mbxStatus> hba state <hba\_state>

DESCRIPTION: The driver issued a CLEAR\_LA mbox command to the HBA that failed. DATA: None SEVERITY: Error LOG: Always ACTION: This error could indicate a firmware or hardware problem. Report these errors to Technical Support.

0321 SLe: Unknown IOCB command

DESCRIPTION: Received an unknown IOCB command completion. DATA: (1) ulpCommand (2) ulpStatus (3) ulpIoTag (4) ulpContext) SEVERITY: Error LOG: Always ACTION: This error could indicate a software driver or firmware problem. If these problems persist, report these errors to Technical Support.

0322 SLw: Ring <ringno> handler: unexpected completion IoTag <IoTag>

DESCRIPTION: The driver could not find a matching command for the completion received on the specified ring. DATA: (1) ulpStatus (2) ulpWord[4] (3) ulpCommand (4) ulpContext SEVERITY: Warning LOG: LOG\_SLI Verbose ACTION: This warning could indicate a software driver or firmware problem. If the problem persists report these errors to Technical Support.



0323 MBe: Unknown Mailbox command <cmd> Cmpl

DESCRIPTION: A unknown mailbox command completed. DATA: (1) Mailbox Command SEVERITY: Error LOG: Always ACTION: This error could indicate a software driver, firmware or hardware problem. Report these errors to Technical Support.

0324 MBe: Adapter initialization error, mbxCmd <cmd> READ\_NVPARM, mbxStatus <status>

DESCRIPTION: A read nvparams mailbox command failed during port configuration. DATA:(1) Mailbox Command (2) Mailbox Command Status SEVERITY: Error LOG: Always ACTION: This error could indicate a software driver, firmware or hardware problem. Report these errors to Technical Support.

0325 SLw: Post buffer for ring <num> failed

DESCRIPTION: The driver cannot allocate a buffer to post to the ring. This usually indicates that the host system is out of buffers. DATA:(1) missbufcnt SEVERITY: Warning LOG: LOG\_SLI verbose ACTION: Report these errors to Technical Support if the problem persists.

#### Initialization Events (0400 - 0499)

0405 INi: Service Level Interface (SLI) 2 selected

DESCRIPTION: A CONFIG\_PORT (SLI2) mailbox command was issued. DATA: None SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_INIT Verbose ACTION: No action needed, informational.

0406 INw: Memory buffer pool is below low water mark

DESCRIPTION: A driver memory buffer pool is low on buffers. DATA: (1) seg (2) fc\_lowmem (3) low SEVERITY: Warning LOG: LOG\_INIT Verbose ACTION: None required. The driver will recover as buffers are returned to the pool.

0407 INe: Memory Buffer Pool is at upper limit.

DESCRIPTION: A memory buffer pool cannot add more buffers because it is at its himem value. DATA: (1) seg (2) q\_cnt (3) himem SEVERITY: Error LOG: Always ACTION: None required. The driver will recover as buffers are returned to the pool.



0409 INe: Memory Buffer Pool is out of buffers

DESCRIPTION: A driver memory buffer pool is exhausted. DATA: (1) seg (2) fc\_free (3) fc\_mbox.q\_cnt (4) fc\_memhi SEVERITY: Error LOG: Always ACTION: Configure more resources for that buffer pool. If the problem persists, report the error to Technical Support.

0410 INe: Cannot find virtual addr for mapped buf on ring <num>

DESCRIPTION: The driver cannot find the specified buffer in its mapping table. Thus it cannot find the virtual address needed to access the data. DATA: (1) first (2) q\_first (3) q\_last (4) q\_cnt SEVERITY: Error LOG: Always ACTION: This error could indicate a software driver or firmware problem. If the problem persists report these errors to Technical Support.

0411 INc: fcp\_bind\_method is 4 with Persistent binding - ignoring fcp\_bind\_method

DESCRIPTION: The configuration parameter for fcp\_bind\_method conflicts with Persistent binding parameter. DATA: (1) a\_current (2) fcp\_mapping SEVERITY: Error config LOG: Always ACTION: Make neccessary changes to the lpfc configuration file.

0412 INe: Scan-down is out of range - ignoring scan-down

DESCRIPTION: The configuration parameter for scan-down is out of range. DATA: (1) clp[CFG\_SCAN\_DOWN].a\_current (2) fcp\_mapping SEVERITY: Error LOG: Always ACTION: Make neccessary changes to the lpfc configuration file.

0413 es0: Configuration parameter out of range, resetting to default value

DESCRIPTION: You are attempting to set a configuration parameter to a value not supported by the driver. Resetting the configuration parameter to the default value. DATA: (1) a\_string (2) a\_low (3) a\_hi (4) a\_default SEVERITY: Error config LOG: Always ACTION: Make neccessary changes to the lpfc configuration file.

0427 INc: Same node has multiple persistent WWPN binding definitions.

DESCRIPTION: You are attempting to define multiple persistent WWPN bindings to a single node. Only the first persistent binding is accepted and the rest are ignored.

DATA: (1) a\_string SEVERITY: Error config LOG: Always ACTION: Make necessary changes to the lpfc configuration file.



0428 INc: Same node has multiple persistent WWNN binding definitions.

DESCRIPTION: You are attempting to define multiple persistent WWNN bindings to a single node. Only the first persistent binding is accepted and the rest are ignored. DATA: (1) a\_string SEVERITY: Error config LOG: Always ACTION: Make necessary changes to the lpfc configuration file.

0429 INc: Same node has multiple persistent DID binding definitions.

DESCRIPTION: You are attempting to define multiple persistent DID bindings to a single node. Only the first persistent binding is accepted and the rest are ignored. DATA: (1) a\_string SEVERITY: Error config LOG: Always ACTION: Make necessary changes to the lpfc configuration file.

0430 INc: WWPN binding entry <num>: syntax error code <code>

DESCRIPTION: A syntax error occurred while parsing WWPN binding configuration information. DATA: None Detail: Binding syntax error codes 0 FC SYNTAX OK 1 FC SYNTAX OK BUT NOT THIS BRD 2 FC\_SYNTAX\_ERR\_ASC\_CONVERT 3 FC SYNTAX ERR EXP COLON 4 FC SYNTAX ERR EXP LPFC 5 FC SYNTAX ERR INV LPFC NUM 6 FC SYNTAX ERR EXP T 7 FC\_SYNTAX\_ERR\_INV\_TARGET\_NUM 8 FC SYNTAX ERR EXP D 9 FC SYNTAX ERR INV DEVICE NUM 10 FC SYNTAX ERR INV RRATIO NUM 11 FC\_SYNTAX\_ERR\_EXP\_NULL\_TERM SEVERITY: Error config LOG: Always ACTION: Make neccessary changes to the lpfc configuration file.



0431 INc: WWNN binding entry <num>: syntax error code <code>

DESCRIPTION: A syntax error occured while parsing WWNN binding configuration information. DATA: None Detail: Binding syntax error codes 0 FC SYNTAX OK 1 FC SYNTAX OK BUT NOT THIS BRD 2 FC\_SYNTAX\_ERR\_ASC\_CONVERT 3 FC\_SYNTAX\_ERR\_EXP\_COLON 4 FC\_SYNTAX\_ERR\_EXP\_LPFC 5 FC\_SYNTAX\_ERR\_INV\_LPFC\_NUM 6 FC\_SYNTAX\_ERR\_EXP\_T 7 FC\_SYNTAX\_ERR\_INV\_TARGET\_NUM 8 FC SYNTAX ERR EXP D 9 FC\_SYNTAX\_ERR\_INV\_DEVICE\_NUM 10 FC\_SYNTAX\_ERR\_INV\_RRATIO\_NUM 11 FC\_SYNTAX\_ERR\_EXP\_NULL\_TERM SEVERITY: Error config LOG: always ACTION: Make neccessary changes to the lpfc configuration file.

0432 INc: WWPN binding entry: node table full

DESCRIPTION: More bindings entries were configured than the driver can handle. DATA: None SEVERITY: Error config LOG: Always ACTION: Make neccessary changes to the lpfc configuration file so that fewer bindings are configured.

0433 INc: WWNN binding entry: node table full

DESCRIPTION: More bindings entries were configured than the driver can handle. DATA: None SEVERITY: Error config LOG: Always ACTION: Make neccessary changes to the lpfc configuration file so that fewer bindings are configured.



0434 INc: DID binding entry <num>: syntax error code <code>

DESCRIPTION: A syntax error occured while parsing DID binding configuration information. DATA: None Detail: Binding syntax error codes 0 FC SYNTAX OK 1 FC SYNTAX OK BUT NOT THIS BRD 2 FC\_SYNTAX\_ERR\_ASC\_CONVERT 3 FC\_SYNTAX\_ERR\_EXP\_COLON 4 FC\_SYNTAX\_ERR\_EXP\_LPFC 5 FC\_SYNTAX\_ERR\_INV\_LPFC\_NUM 6 FC SYNTAX ERR EXP T 7 FC\_SYNTAX\_ERR\_INV\_TARGET\_NUM 8 FC SYNTAX ERR EXP D 9 FC\_SYNTAX\_ERR\_INV\_DEVICE\_NUM 10 FC\_SYNTAX\_ERR\_INV\_RRATIO\_NUM 11 FC\_SYNTAX\_ERR\_EXP\_NULL\_TERM SEVERITY: Error config LOG: Always ACTION: Make neccessary changes to the lpfc configuration file.

0435 INc: DID binding entry: node table full

DESCRIPTION: More bindings entries were configured than the driver can handle. DATA: None SEVERITY: Error config LOG: Always ACTION: Make neccessary changes to the lpfc configuration file so that fewer bindings are configured.

0436: Adapter failed to init, timeout, status reg <status>

DESCRIPTION: The adapter failed during powerup diagnostics after it was reset. DATA: None SEVERITY: Error LOG: Always ACTION: This error could indicate a hardware or firmware problem. If the problem persists, report the error to Technical Support.

0437 INe: Adapter failed to initialize chipset

DESCRIPTION: The adapter failed during powerup diagnostics after it was reset. DATA: (1) status (2) status1 (3) status2 SEVERITY: Error LOG: Always ACTION: This error could indicate a hardware or firmware problem. If the problem persists, report the error to Technical Support.

0438 INe: Adapter failed to initialize chipset

DESCRIPTION: The adapter failed during powerup diagnostics after it was reset. DATA: (1) status (2) status1 (3) status2 SEVERITY: Error LOG: Always ACTION: This error could indicate a hardware or firmware problem. If the problem persists, report the error to Technical Support.



0439 INe: Adapter failed to init, mbxCmd <cmd> READ\_REV, mbxStatus <status>

DESCRIPTION: Adapter initialization failed when issuing a READ\_REV mailbox command. DATA: None SEVERITY: Error LOG: Always ACTION: This error could indicate a hardware or firmware problem. If the problem persists, report the error to Technical Support.

0440 INe: Adapter failed to init, mbxCmd <cmd> READ\_REV, detected outdated firmware

DESCRIPTION: Outdated firmware was detected during initialization. DATA: (1) read\_rev\_reset SEVERITY: Error LOG: Always ACTION: This error could indicate a hardware or firmware problem. Update the firmware. If the problem persists, report the error to Technical Support.

0441 INi: VPD not present on adapter, mbxCmd <cmd> DUMP VPD, mbxStatus <status>

DESCRIPTION: The DUMP\_VPD mailbox command failed. DATA: None SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_INIT Verbose ACTION: This error could indicate a hardware or firmware problem. If the problem persists, report the error to Technical Support.

0442 INe: Adapter failed to init, mbxCmd <cmd> CONFIG\_PORT, mbxStatus <status>

DESCRIPTION: Adapter initialization failed when issuing a CONFIG\_PORT mailbox command. DATA: (1) hbainit SEVERITY: Error LOG: Always ACTION: This error could indicate a hardware or firmware problem. If the problem persists, report the error to Technical Support.

0446 INe: Adapter failed to init, mbxCmd <cmd> CFG\_RING, mbxStatus <status>, ring <num>

DESCRIPTION: Adapter initialization failed when issuing a CFG\_RING mailbox command. DATA: None SEVERITY: Error LOG: Always ACTION: This error could indicate a hardware or firmware problem. If the problem persists, report the error to Technical Support.

0447 INe: Adapter failed init, mbxCmd <cmd> CONFIG\_LINK mbxStatus <status>

DESCRIPTION: Adapter initialization failed when issuing a CONFIG\_LINK mailbox command. DATA: None SEVERITY: Error LOG: Always ACTION: This error could indicate a hardware or firmware problem. If the problem persists, report the error to Technical Support.



0448 INe: Adapter failed to init, mbxCmd <cmd> READ\_SPARM, mbxStatus <status>

DESCRIPTION: Adapter initialization failed when issuing a READ\_SPARM mailbox command. DATA: None SEVERITY: Error LOG: Always ACTION: This error could indicate a hardware or firmware problem. If the problem persists, report the error to Technical Support.

0449 INe: WorldWide PortName type <type> doesn't conform to IP Profile

DESCRIPTION: In order to run IP, the WorldWide PortName must be of type IEEE (NAA = 1). This message is displayed if the adapter WWPN doesn't conform with the standard. DATA: None SEVERITY: Error LOG: Always ACTION: Turn off the network-on configuration parameter or configure a different WWPN.

0450 INw: Adapter failed to init, mbxCmd <cmd> FARP, mbxStatus <status>

DESCRIPTION: Adapter initialization failed when issuing a FARP mailbox command. DATA: None SEVERITY: Warning LOG: LOG\_INIT Verbose ACTION: None required.

0451 INe: Enable interrupt handler failed

DESCRIPTION: The driver attempted to register the HBA interrupt service routine with the host operating system, but failed. DATA: None SEVERITY: Error LOG: Always ACTION: This error could indicate a hardware or driver problem. If the problem persists, report the error to Technical Support.

0453 INe: Adapter failed to init, mbxCmd <cmd> READ\_CONFIG, mbxStatus <status>

DESCRIPTION: Adapter initialization failed when issuing a READ\_CONFIG mailbox command. DATA: None SEVERITY: Error LOG: Always ACTION: This error could indicate a hardware or firmware problem. If the problem persists, report the error to Technical Support.

0454 INe: Adapter failed to init, mbxCmd <cmd> INIT\_LINK, mbxStatus <status>

DESCRIPTION: Adapter initialization failed when issuing an INIT\_LINK mailbox command. DATA: None SEVERITY: Error LOG: Always ACTION: This error could indicate a hardware or firmware problem. If the problem persists, report the error to Technical Support.



0455 INi: Vital Product

DESCRIPTION: Vital product data (VPD) contained in the HBA flash. DATA: (1) vpd[0] (2) vpd[1] (3) vpd[2] (4) vpd[3] SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_INIT Verbose ACTION: No action needed, informational.

0457 INe: Adapter Hardware Error

DESCRIPTION: The driver received an interrupt indicting a possible hardware problem. Data: (1) status (2) status1 (3) status2 SEVERITY: Error LOG: Always ACTION: This error could indicate a hardware or firmware problem. If the problem persists, report the error to Technical Support.

0458 INw: Bring adapter online

DESCRIPTION: The FC driver has received a request to bring the adapter online. This may occur when running lputil. DATA: None SEVERITY: Warning LOG: LOG\_INIT Verbose ACTION: None required.

0460 INw: Bring adapter offline

DESCRIPTION: The FC driver has received a request to bring the adapter offline. This may occur when running lputil. DATA: None SEVERITY: Warning LOG: LOG\_INIT Verbose ACTION: None required.

0462 INe: Too many cmd / rsp ring entries in SLI2 SLIM

DESCRIPTION: The configuration parameter for Scan-down is out of range. DATA: (1) totiocb (2) MAX\_SLI2\_IOCB SEVERITY: Error LOG: Always ACTION: This is a software driver error. If this problem persists, report these errors to Technical Support.

## IP Traffic History (0600 - 0699)

0600 IPi: FARP-RSP received from DID <did>

DESCRIPTION: A FARP-ELS command response was received. DATA: None SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_IP Verbose ACTION: None required, informational.



0601 IPi: FARP-REQ received from DID <did>

DESCRIPTION: A FARP-ELS command response was received. DATA: None SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_IP Verbose ACTION: None required, informational.

0602 IPw: IP Response Ring <num> out of posted buffers

DESCRIPTION: The IP ring returned all posted buffers to the driver and is waiting for the driver to post new buffers. This could mean the host system is out of TCP/IP buffers. DATA: (1) fc\_missbufcnt (2) NoRcvBuf SEVERITY: Warning LOG: LOG\_IP Verbose ACTION: Try allocating more IP buffers (STREAMS buffers or mbufs) of size 4096 and/or increasing the post-ip-buf lpfc configuration parameter, then reboot the system.

0603 IPw: xmi Sequence completion error

DESCRIPTION: A XMIT\_SEQUENCE command completed with a status error in the IOCB. DATA: (1) ulpStatus (2) ulpIoTag (3) ulpWord[4] (4) did SEVERITY: Warning LOG: LOG\_IP Verbose ACTION: If there are many errors to one device, check the state of the remote PortID. The driver attempts to recover by creating a new exchange to the remote driver.

0605 IPw: No room on IP xmit queue

DESCRIPTION: The system is generating the IOCB commands to be processed faster than the HBA can process them. DATA: (1) xmitnoroom SEVERITY: Warning LOG: LOG\_IP Verbose ACTION: Check the state of the link. If the link is up and running, reconfigure the xmit queue size to be larger. Note, a larger queue size may require more physical connections to the Fibre Channel network.

0606 IPi: XRI Create for IP traffic to DID <DID>

DESCRIPTION: The lpfc driver is missing an exchange resource identifier (XRI) for this node and needs to create one prior to the transmit operation. DATA: None SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_IP Verbose ACTION: None required, informational.

0607 IPi: XRI response from DID with XRI <xri> and status <ulpStatus>

DESCRIPTION: The driver received an XRI response from SLI with the resulting exchange resource ID and status. DATA: None SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_IP Verbose ACTION: None required, informational.



0608 IPw: IP packet timed out

DESCRIPTION: An IP IOCB command was posted to a ring and did not complete within the timeout seconds. DATA: None SEVERITY: Warning LOG: LOG\_IP Verbose ACTION: If no IP packet is going through the HBA, reboot the system. If the problem persists, contact Technical Support.

0609 IPe: Network buffer and DMA address mismatch

DESCRIPTION: An IP buffer free operation found a mismatch between an IP buffer and its dma address. DATA: (1) pib (2) ip buff found (3) ip buf actual (4) dma address SEVERITY: Error LOG: Always ACTION: Stop traffic and reboot the system.

0610 IPi: FARP Request sent to remote DID

DESCRIPTION: A send to a remote IP address has no node in the driver's nodelists. Send a FARP request to obtain the node's HW address. DATA: (1) IEEE[0] (2) IEEE[1] (3) IEEE [2] (4) IEEE [3] (5) IEEE [4] (6) IEEE [5] SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_IP Verbose ACTION: Issue FARP and wait for PLOGI from remote node.

0611 IPe: Dropping received IP packet

DESCRIPTION: The driver decided to drop an IP Response ring entry. DATA: (1) ulpStatus (2) ulpWord SEVERITY: Error LOG: Always ACTION: This error could indicate a software driver or firmware problem. If the problem persists, report the error to Technical Support.

# FCP Traffic History (0700 - 0799)

0701 FPi: Issue Abort Task Set to TGT <num> LUN <num>

DESCRIPTION: The SCSI layer detected that it needs to abort all I/O to a specific device. This causes the FCP Task Management command to abort the I/O in progress. DATA: (1) rpi (2) flags SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_FCP Verbose ACTION: Check the state of the device in question.



0702 FPi: Issue Target Reset to TGT <num>

DESCRIPTION: The SCSI layer detected that it needs to abort all I/O to a specific target. This results in an FCP Task Management command to abort the I/O in progress. DATA: (1) rpi (2) flags SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_FCP Verbose ACTION: Check the state of the target in question.

0703 FPi: Issue LUN Reset to TGT <num> LUN <num>

DESCRIPTION: The SCSI layer detected that it must abort all I/O to a specific device. This results in an FCP Task Management command to abort the I/O in progress. DATA: (1) rpi (2) flags SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_FCP Verbose ACTION: Check the state of the device in guestion.

0710 FPi: lodone <target>/<lun> error <result> SNS <lp> <lp3>

DESCRIPTION: This error indicates that the Fibre Channel driver is returning a SCSI command to the SCSI layer in error or with sense data. DATA: (1) retry (2) resid SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_FCP Verbose ACTION: None required, informational.

0712 FPe: SCSI layer issued abort device

DESCR IPTION: The SCSI layer is requesting the driver to abort I/O to a specific device. DATA: (1) target (2) lun (3) SEVERITY: Error LOG: Always ACTION: Check the state of the device in question.

0713 FPe: SCSI layer issued target reset

DESCRIPTION: The SCSI layer is requesting the driver to abort I/O to a specific target. DATA: (1) target (2) lun SEVERITY: Error LOG: Always ACTION: Check the state of the target in question.

0714 FPe: SCSI layer issued bus reset

DESCRIPTION: The SCSI layer is requesting the driver to abort all I/Os to all targets on this HBA. DATA: None SEVERITY: Error LOG: Always ACTION: Check the state of the targets in question.



0716 FPi: FCP Read Underrun, expected <len>, residual <resid>

DESCRIPTION: An FCP device provided less data than was requested. DATA: (1) fcpi\_parm (2) cmnd[0] (3) underflow SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_FCP Verbose ACTION: None required, informational.

0721 FPi: Cmpl Inquiry SN on NPort <nlp\_DID>

DESCRIPTION: An INQUIRY Serial Number (page x83) completed. This information is saved by the driver. DATA: (1) ulpStatus (2) rspStatus2 (3) rspStatus3 (4) scsi\_id (5) lun\_id SEVERITY: Information LOG: Log\_FCP Verbose ACTION: None required, informational.

0722 FPi: INQUIRY SN info

DESCRIPTION: This is the serial number of the device that will be saved. DATA: (1) datap\* (2) datap + 3\* (3) datap + 7 (4) rspResId SEVERITY: Information LOG: Log\_FCP Verbose ACTION: None required, informational.

0723 FPi: Issue Inquiry SN on NPort <nlp\_DID>

DESCRIPTION: Issuing an INQUIRY Serial Number (page x83) FCP command. DATA: (1) failMask (2) scsi\_id (3) lun\_id SEVERITY: Information LOG: Log\_FCP Verbose ACTION: None required, informational.

0724 FPi: Issue Inquiry PO on NPort <nlp\_DID>

DESCRIPTION: N/A DATA: Issuing an INQUIRY Serial Number (page x0) FCP command. SEVERITY: Information LOG: Log\_FCP Verbose ACTION: None required, informational.

0725 FPe: Inquiry Serial Number: invalid length

DESCRIPTION: An INQUIRY SN command completed with an invalid serial number length DATA: (1) sizasn (2) scsi\_id (3) scis\_id (4) lun\_id SEVERITY: Error LOG: Always ACTION: Check remote NPORT for potential problem.

0726 FPe: INQUIRY SN cmd failed

DESCRIPTION: The INQUIRY Serial Number (page x83) failed. DATA: (1) ulpStatus (2) fcpi\_parm (3) m\_target (4) m\_lun SEVERITY: Error LOG: Always ACTION: Check if target device supports this command.



0727 FPi: Cmpl INQUIRY PO on NPort <nlp\_DID>

DESCRIPTION: An INQUIRY (page 0) completed. This information is saved by the driver. DATA: (1) ulpStatus (2) rspStatus2 (3) rspStatus3 (4) scsi\_id (5) lun\_id SEVERITY: Information LOG: Log\_FCP Verbose ACTION: None required, informational.

0728 FPe: INQUIRY Page 0 cmd failed

DESCRIPTION: The INQUIRY (page 0) failed. DATA: (1) ulpStatus (2) fcpi\_parm (3) scsi\_id (4) lun\_id SEVERITY: Error LOG: Always ACTION: Check if target device supports this command.

0729 FPw: FCP cmd <cmnd> failed <target>/<lun>

DESCRIPTION: The specified device failed an FCP command. DATA: (1) status (2) result (3) xri (4) iotag SEVERITY: Warning LOG: LOG\_FCP Verbose ACTION: Check the state of the target in question.

0730 FPw: FCP command failed: RSP

DESCRIPTION: The FCP command failed with a response error. DATA: (1) Status2 (2) Status3 (3) ResId (4) SnsLen (5) RspLen (6) Info3 SEVERITY: Warning LOG: LOG\_FCP Verbose ACTION: Check the state of the target in question.

0734 FPw: FCP Read Check Error

DESCRIPTION: The issued FCP command returned a read check error. DATA: (1) fcpDI (2) rspResId (3) fcpi\_parm (4) cdb[0] SEVERITY: Warning LOG: LOG\_FCP Verbose ACTION: Check the state of the target in question.

0735 FPw: FCP Read Check Error with Check Condition

DESCRIPTION: The issued FCP command returned a read check error and a check condition. DATA: (1) fcpDI (2) rspResId (3) fcpi\_parm (4) cdb[0] SEVERITY: Warning LOG: LOG\_FCP Verbose ACTION: Check the state of the target in question.

0736 FPi: Received Queue Full status from FCP device <tgt> <lun>

DESCRIPTION: Received a Queue Full error status from specified FCP device. DATA: (1) qfull\_retry\_count (2) qfull\_retries (3) currentOutstanding (4) maxOutstanding SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_FCP Verbose ACTION: None required, informational.



0737: <ASC ASCQ> Check condition received

DESCRIPTION: The issued FCP command resulted in a check condition. DATA: (1) CFG\_DELAY\_RSP\_ERR (3) \*lp SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_FCP | LOG\_CHK\_COND Verbose ACTION: None required, informational.

0747 FPi: Cmpl target reset

DESCRIPTION: A driver-initiated target reset completed. DATA: (1) scsi\_id (2) lun\_id (3) Error (4)statLocalError (5) \*cmd + WD7 SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_FCP Verbose ACTION: None required, informational.

0748 FPi: Cmpl LUN reset

DESCRIPTION: A driver-initiated LUN reset completed. DATA: (1) scsi\_id (2) lun\_id (3) Error (4) statLocalError (5) \*cmd + WD7 SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_FCP Verbose ACTION: None required, informational.

0749 FPi: Cmpl Abort Task Set

DESCRIPTION: A driver-initiated abort task set completed. DATA: (1) scsi\_id (2) lun\_id (3) Error (4) statLocalError (5) \*cmd + WD7 SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_FCP Verbose ACTION: None required.

0753 FPe: Inquiry Serial Number: invalid length

DESCRIPTION: An INQUIRY SN command completed with an invalid serial number length. DATA: (1) sizeSN (2) j (3) scsi\_id (4) lun\_id SEVERITY: Error LOG: Always ACTION: Check state of target in question.

0754 FPe: SCSI timeout

DESCRIPTION: An FCP IOCB command was posted to a ring and did not complete within ULP timeout seconds. DATA:(1) did (2) sid (3) lun (4) command (5) iotag SEVERITY: Error LOG: Always ACTION: If I/O is not going through the adapter, reboot the system; otherwise check the state of the target in guestion. If the problem persists, contact Technical Support.



#### Node Table Events (0900 - 0999)

0900 NDi: Cleanup node for NPort <nlp\_DID>

DESCRIPTION: The driver node table entry for a remote NPort was removed. DATA: (1) nlp\_flag (2) nlp\_state (3) nlp\_rpi SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_NODE Verbose ACTION: None required, informational.

0901 NDi: FIND node DID mapped

DESCRIPTION:The driver is searching for a node table entry, on the mapped node list, based on the DID. DATA: (1) nlp (2) nlp\_DID (3) nlp\_flag (4) data1 SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_NODE Verbose ACTION: None required, informational.

0902 NDi: FIND node DID mapped

DESCRIPTION: The driver is searching for a node table entry, on the mapped node list, based on DID. DATA: (1) nlp (2) nlp\_DID (3) nlp\_flag (4) data1 SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_NODE Verbose ACTION: None required, informational.

0903 NDi: Add scsiid <sid> to BIND list

DESCRIPTION: The driver is putting the node table entry on the binding list. DATA: 1) bind\_cnt (2) nlp\_DID (3) bind\_type (4) blp SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_NODE Verbose ACTION: None required, informational.

0904 NDi: Add NPort <did> to <list> list

DESCRIPTION: The driver is moving the node table entry on the specified list. DATA: (1) nlp\_flag (2) blp SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_NODE Verbose ACTION: None required, informational.

0910 NDi: FIND node DID unmapped

DESCRIPTION: The driver is searching for a node table entry on the unmapped node list, based on DID. DATA: (1) nlp (2) nlp\_DID (3) nlp\_flag (4) data1 SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_NODE Verbose ACTION: None required, informational.



0911 NDi: FIND node DID unmapped

DESCRIPTION: The driver is searching for a node table entry, on the unmapped node list, based on DID. DATA: (1) nlp (2) nlp\_DID (3) nlp\_flag (4) data1 SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_NODE Verbose ACTION: None required, informational.

0917 NDi: PUT END nodelist

DESCRIPTION: The driver is freeing a node table entry buffer. DATA: (1) bp (2) fc\_free SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_NODE Verborse ACTION: None required, informational.

0927 NDi: GET nodelist

DESCRIPTION: The driver is allocating a buffer to hold a node table entry. DATA: (1) bp (2) fc\_free SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_NODE Verbose ACTION: None required, informational.

0928 NDi: PUT nodelist

DESCRIPTION: The driver is freeing a node table entry buffer. DATA: (1) bp (2) fc\_free SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_NODE Verbose ACTION: None required, informational.

0929 NDi: FIND UNMAPPED node DID

DESCRIPTION: The driver is searching for a node table entry, on the unmapped node list, based on DID. DATA: (1) nlp (2) nlp\_DID (3) nlp\_flag (4) data1 SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_NODE Verbose ACTION: None required, informational.

0930 NDi: FIND MAPPED node DID

DESCRIPTION: The driver is searching for a node table entry, on the mapped node list, based on DID. DATA: (1) nlp (2) nlp\_DID (3) nlp\_flag (4) data1 SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_NODE Verbose ACTION: None required, informational.

0931 NDi: FIND PLOGI node DID

DESCRIPTION: The driver is searching for a node table entry, on the PLOGI node list, based on DID. DATA: (1) nlp (2) nlp\_DID (3) nlp\_flag (4) data1 SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_NODE Verbose ACTION: None required, informational.



0932 NDi: FIND REGLOGIN node DID

DESCRIPTION: The driver was searching for a node table entry on the REGLOGIN node list, based on the DID. DATA: (1) nlp (2) nlp\_DID (3) nlp\_flag (4) data1 SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG NODE Verbose

ACTION: None required, informational.

0933 NDi: FIND PRLI node DID

DESCRIPTION: The driver was searching for a node table entry on the PRLI node list, based on the DID. DATA: (1) nlp (2) nlp\_DID (3) nlp\_flag (4) data1 SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_NODE Verbose ACTION: None required, informational.

0934 NDi: FIND ADISC node DID

DESCRIPTION: The driver was searching for a node table entry on the ADISC list, based on the DID. DATA: (1) nlp (2) nlp\_DID (3) nlp\_flag (4) data1 SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_NODE Verbose ACTION: None required, informational.

0935 NDi: FIND NPR node DID

DESCRIPTION: The driver was searching for a node table entry on the NPR node list, based on the DID. DATA: (1) nlp (2) nlp\_DID (3) nlp\_flag (4) data1 SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_NODE Verbose ACTION: None required, informational.

0936 NDi: FIND UNUSED node DID

DESCRIPTION: The driver was searching for a node table entry on the UNUSED node list, based on the DID. DATA: (1) nlp (2) nlp\_DID (3) nlp\_flag (4) data1 SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_NODE Verbose ACTION: None required, informational.

0937 NDi: FIND node DID <did> NOT FOUND

DESCRIPTION: The driver was searching for a node table entry based on the DID and the entry was not found. DATA: (1) order SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_NODE Verbose ACTION: None required, informational.

## Miscellaneous Events (1200 - 1299)

1200: Cannot unload driver while lpfcdiag interface is active

DESCRIPTION: An attempt was made to unload the driver while the DFC interface was active. DATA: (1) refcnt (2) instance SEVERITY: Error LOG: Always ACTION: Exit any application that uses the DFC diagnostic interface before attempting to unload the driver.

1208 MIi: C\_CT request error

DESCRIPTION: The CT response returned more data than the user buffer could hold. DATA: (1) dfc\_flag (2) 4096 SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_MISC Verbose ACTION: Modify the user application issuing a CT request to allow for a larger response buffer.

1210 MIe: Convert ASC to hex. Input byte cnt <1

DESCRIPTION: ASCII string to hexadecimal conversion failed. The input byte count is greater than 1. DATA: None SEVERITY: Error LOG: Always ACTION: This error could indicate a software driver problem. If the problem persists, report the error to Technical Support.

1211 MIe: Convert ASC to hex. Input byte cnt > max <num>

DESCRIPTION: ASCII string to hexadecimal conversion failed. The input byte count exceeds max <num>. DATA: None SEVERITY: Error LOG: Always ACTION: This error could indicate a software driver problem. If problems persist report, these errors to Technical Support.

1212 MIe: Convert ASC to hex. Output buffer to small

DESCRIPTION: ASCII string to hexadecimal conversion failed. The output buffer byte size is less than 1/2 of the input byte count. Every two input characters (bytes) require one output byte. DATA: None SEVERITY: Error LOG: Always ACTION: This error could indicate a software driver problem. If the problem persists, report the error to Technical Support.

1213 MIc: Convert ASC to hex. Input char seq not ASC hex

DESCRIPTION: The ASCII hexadecimal input string contains a non-ASCII hex character. DATA: None SEVERITY: Error configuration LOG: Always ACTION: Make necessary changes to the lpfc configuration file.



1214 MIe: Cannot unload driver, IP interface still attached.

DESCRIPTION: An attempt was made to unload the driver while the IP interface was active. DATA: (1) refcnt (2) brd\_no SEVERITY: Error LOG: Always ACTION: Exit the IP interface before attempting to unload the driver.

## Link Events (1300 - 1399)

1300 LKe: Re-establishing Link, timer expired

DESCRIPTION: The driver detected a condition where it had to re-initialize the link. DATA: (1) fc\_flag (2) fc\_ffstate SEVERITY: Error LOG: Always ACTION: If numerous link events are occurring, check the physical connections to the Fibre Channel network.

1301 LKi: Re-establishing Link

DESCRIPTION: The driver detected a condition in which it had to re-initialize the link. DATA: (1) status (2) status1 (3) status2 SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_LINK\_EVENT Verbose ACTION: If numerous link events are occurring, check the physical connections to the Fibre Channel network.

1302 Lli: Reset link speed to auto. 1G HBA cfg'd for 2G

DESCRIPTION: The driver is re initializing the link speed to auto-detect. DATA: (1) current link speed SEVERITY: Warning LOG: LOG\_LINK\_EVENT Verbose ACTION: None required, informational.

1303 LKe: Link Up Event <eventTag> received

DESCRIPTION: A link up event was received. It is also possible for multiple link events to be received together. DATA:(1) fc eventTag (2) granted AL PA (3) UlnkSpeed (4) alpa map[0]

Detail: If link events received, log (1) last event number received, (2) ALPA granted, (3) Link speed (4) number of entries in the loop init LILP ALPA map. An ALPA map message is also recorded if LINK\_EVENT Verbose mode is set. Each ALPA map message contains 16 ALPAs. SEVERITY: Error LOG: Always ACTION: If numerous link events are occurring, check the physical connections to the Fibre Channel network.



1304 LKw: Link Up Event ALPA map

DESCRIPTION: A link up event was received. DATA: (1) wd1 (2) wd2 (3) wd3 (4) wd4 SEVERITY: Warning LOG: LOG\_LINK\_EVENT Verbose ACTION: If numerous link events are occurring, check the physical connections to the Fibre Channel network.

1305 LKe: Link Down Event <eventTag> received

DESCRIPTION: A link down event was received. DATA: (1) fc\_eventTag (2) hba\_state (3) fc\_flag SEVERITY: Error LOG: Always ACTION: If numerous link events are occurring, check the physical connections to the Fibre Channel network.

1306 LKe: Link Down timeout on HBA

DESCRIPTION: The link was down for more than the configured link-down-tmo seconds. DATA: (1) hba\_state (2) fc\_flag (3) fc\_ns\_retry SEVERITY: Warning LOG: LOG\_LINK\_EVENT | LOG\_DISCOVERY verbose ACTION: Check HBA cable/connections to Fibre Channel network.

1307 LKi: READ\_LA mbox error <mbxStatus> state <hba\_state>

DESCRIPTION: The driver cannot determine what type of link event occurred. DATA: None SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_LINK\_EVENT Verbose ACTION: If numerous link events are occurring, check the physical connections to the Fibre Channel network. May indicate a possible hardware or firmware problem.

1308 LKe: Out of memory; Ignoring the link attention.

DESCRIPTION: The driver is unable to process the link attention due to insufficient memory. DATA: None SEVERITY: Error LOG: Always ACTION: This error could indicate a software driver problem. If the problem persists, contact Technical Support.

# Log Messages - IOCTL Events (1600 - 1699)

1600 IOi: dfc\_ioctl entry

DESCRIPTION: The entry point for processing diagnostic ioctl. DATA:(1) c\_cmd (2) c\_arg1 (3) c\_arg2 (4) c\_outsz SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_IP Verbose ACTION: None required, informational.



1601 IOi: dfc\_ioctl exit

DESCRIPTION: The exit point for processing diagnostic ioctl. DATA: (1) rc (2) c\_outsz (3) c\_dataout SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_IP Verbose ACTION: None required, informational.

1602 IOi: dfc\_data\_alloc

DESCRIPTION: Allocating data buffer to process dfc ioct. DATA: (1) fc\_dataout (2) fc\_outsz SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_IOC Verbose ACTION: None required, informational.

1603 IOi: dfc\_data\_free

DESCRIPTION: The data buffer is being freed to process dfc ioct. DATA: (1) fc\_dataout (2) fc\_outsz SEVERITY: Information LOG: LOG\_IOC Verbose ACTION: None required, informational.

1604 IOe: lpfc\_ioctl:error

DESCRIPTION: The SCSI send request buffer size limit was exceeded. DATA: (1) error number index SEVERITY: Error LOG: Always ACTION: Reduce the application program's SCSI send request buffer size to less then 320K bytes.